# SWAHILI

## DICTIONARY & PHRASEBOOK

SWAHILI - ENGLISH
ENGLISH - SWAHILI

NICHOLAS AWDE

# SWAHILI

## Swahili-English
## English-Swahili
# Dictionary and Phrasebook

by

NICHOLAS AWDE

HIPPOCRENE BOOKS INC
New York

Copyright © 2002 By Nicholas Awde

*Seventh printing, 2011.*

All rights reserved.

Typeset & designed by Desert♥Hearts

For information, address:
HIPPOCRENE BOOKS, INC.
171 Madison Avenue
New York, NY 10016
www.hippocrenebooks.com

ISBN-10: 0-7818-0905-3
ISBN-13: 978-0-7818-0905-4

Printed in the United States of America.

# CONTENTS


| | |
|---|---|
| Introduction | **5** |
| A Very Basic Grammar | **10** |
| Pronunciation Guide | **19** |
| SWAHILI–ENGLISH DICTIONARY | **23** |
| ENGLISH–SWAHILI DICTIONARY | **55** |
| SWAHILI PHRASEBOOK | **95** |
| Maps | **194** |

# INTRODUCTION

The original Swahili speakers have traditionally lived along the three thousand miles that make up the East African coast and its outlying islands. Although their origins are varied, they are united by a common culture and language, Swahili.

The Waswahili, or Swahili people, are a dazzling mixture of peoples and cultures, reflected in their people, language and rich cultural heritage — African, Arabic, Persian, Indian. A unique tolerance is also reflected in the continued presence of the many communities who settled on the coast of the Indian Ocean, adopting Swahili as their language, but preserving their other customs and languages: a rainbow comprising Indians (Wahindi) — including Parsees (Maparisi) and Goans (Magoa) — Iranians (Mabaharani) and even Chinese (Wachina). These have joined the older communities of Comorians (Wangazija), Arabs (Waarabu), Yemenis (Washihiri) and indigenous Swahili, such as the Watumbatu in Zanzibar.

## Living testament to its heritage

Naturally the language itself is a remarkable witness to this heritage. Like English, Swahili is a living testament to the peoples and cultures it has absorbed over the centuries — and it has never been afraid of borrowing new terms and concepts.

Arabic and Persian had the greatest influence: the former bringing in words such as **kitabu** (book), **waziri** (minister) and, via Islam, **dini** (religion) and **msikiti** (mosque), while the latter introduced **bandari** (port) and **serikali** (government). Later, words such as **chandarua**

(mosquito net) were taken from the Hindi of Indian merchants. Reflecting the various stages of foreign control in recent centuries, words were also absorbed from the European powers that arrived in the region. The Portuguese, who controlled the Swahili coastal towns from 1500 to 1700, brought **pesa** (money), **meza** (table), and **leso** (handkerchief). The Germans in the 19th century introduced **shule** (school, Swahili also uses the English **skuli**) and the **kaputi** in **nusukaputi** (anesthetic, literally 'half knocked-out').

The influence of English also began in the 19th century, but has continued to this day as a result of its technological and cultural influence throughout the world. Swahilized English words include **basi** (bus), **mashine** (machine), **koti** (coat), and **kipulefti** (roundabout), while more recent international terms include **kompyuta** (computer), **swichi** (switch) and **(ku)risav** (to reserve).

Swahili is also making its influence felt internationally. Many African-Americans, for example, celebrate their African roots with the Feast of Kwanzaa (taken from **kwanza** 'first'), in place of the European New Year, while the language is a rich source for non-European first names. Somewhat controversially, for many decades Swahili has also been the language of choice for Hollywood and TV movies that figure 'Africans' — often with unintentionally hilarious results — despite the fact that more than 1,000 other languages are spoken on the continent. The same is true of popular music and musical theater, most notably in Disney's smash hit *The Lion King*.

Swahili, no doubt helped by its comparatively easy grammar and sound system as well as a huge body of literature to choose from, is also the language of choice for foreigners who want a window on Africa. Created and spoken in as real a melting-pot society as you're likely to find, the language also has an unparalleled accessibility rarely found in other parts of the world.

## Who speaks Swahili?

As a first language, it is spoken mainly along the East African coast from the southern part of Somalia in the north to Mozambique in the south, and also on the islands of Zanzibar, Pemba, Mafia, Lamu, as well as the Comoros Islands and Madagascar. Indeed, the word Swahili derives from the Arabic word for 'coast people'. There are also growing communities of first language speakers throughout East Africa, particularly in the urban areas.

Because Swahili is spoken over a wide area that is also ethnically and linguistically diverse, there are many local variations, e.g. Kiamu, the Swahili spoken in Lamu, is different from Kimvita, spoken further south in Mombasa, while Kiunguja, the Swahili of Zanzibar (Unguja) contrasts with the island's rural Kitumbatu. There still survive forms of pidgin Swahili spoken by the Indian and European groups in previous times (e.g. Kibarawa by the former, and Kisetla, or 'settler language', by the latter). As a language of broadcasting and the press, there is also a vibrant torrent of 'journalese' and new expressions that jostle with the everyday language.

As a second language, Swahili is spoken by the majority of people in Tanzania, Kenya, and Uganda, with significant numbers of speakers in the eastern Shaba and Kivu provinces of the Democratic Republic of Congo (Zaire). There also speakers of Swahili in many nearby countries, e.g. Burundi, Rwanda, Zambia, Malawi, Central African Republic and Mozambique. On the multilingual mainland, it is understood as a third or fourth language by many millions more. And as a seafaring people, it is rare that you will find a major port on the world's oceans where there is not a Swahili-speaking community of sorts.

## Forged by history and trade

East Africa, situated on the Indian Ocean with its annual cycle of trade winds or monsoons, is a perfect site not

only for passing trade on the busy Indian Ocean, but also as an interface for products like gold and crystal produced on the continent, and spices and fabrics produced in the East Indies. The key position of the Swahili ports at the center of this trade network meant that prosperity grew with the increase of trade to growing markets as far as Western Europe, via the Red Sea and the Nile River, and China.

Written records of the trade links between Africa and Asia date back to the first century A.D. One of the earliest accounts to specifically mention the East African coast is from the second century. Written anonymously in Greek in Alexandria in Egypt to the north, it is a detailed description of contemporary merchants from South Arabia visiting the East African coast.

In the eighth century traders from the Persian Gulf established a route linking East Africa and China. By the tenth century they had been supplanted by other Muslim traders from the Red Sea, who set up a route connecting East Africa and the Mediterranean. Rock crystal (quartz), ivory and gold were brought to the coast along inland trade routes. The Swahili obtained the goods at coastal ports and sailed north, where Red Sea traders bought the precious materials and transported them home. Eventually they reached the Mediterranean. The trade reached its peak in the 15th century, referred to as the Golden Age of Swahili civilization.

In this way, the coastal people rapidly developed into a merchant caste, often intermarrying with their foreign co-traders. Part of their success also came from using their language as a medium of communication — as a perfect trade language. As a member of the Bantu linguistic family (see page 10), Swahili spread far and wide since it made communication instantly easier with the majority of the mainlanders, most of whom spoke — and still speak — related languages.

## Spread of the language

As trade spread, so too did the language, although the language remained largely a coastal phenomenon. Long-time interactions with other people bordering the Indian Ocean spread the Swahili language to distant places such as on the islands of Comoros and Madagascar and even far beyond to South Africa, Oman, and the United Arab Emirates. Trade and migration from the Swahili coast during the 19th century helped spread the language to the interior.

Christian missionaries learned Swahili as the tool of communication in Eastern Africa and thus helped further spread the language. They were also responsible for many of the first mass publications in Swahili, moving from the previous Arabic script used mainly for Islamic and trade documents,* to a simpler system based on the Roman alphabet. During the colonial period, Swahili was seen as a logical choice for communication with the East Africans. The administrators of the various colonial powers adopted the urban language of Zanzibar as the standard form. The sultanate was the epicenter of coastal culture and commerce, and therefore the town's dialect, Kiunguja, became the standard Swahili, used for all formal communication, such as in schools, broadcasting and the press, and other publications.

Sharing English as official or national language, Swahili plays a far more prominent role in Tanzania than Kenya or Uganda — where there are fewer first-speakers in any case. Trade, culture and politics, plus the fact that the language has many features in common with other local languages, have made Swahili one of the world's great languages of communication. It is now not only the most largely used African language in East Africa but throughout the continent.

* Written Swahili, however, was rare since, like many other regions which had adopted Islam, the preferred literary language until then had been Arabic.

# A VERY BASIC GRAMMAR

Swahili — or **Kiswahili** — belongs to the Bantu family of languages which are spoken throughout Eastern, Central and Southern Africa and the offshore islands. It is an official language of Tanzania and Kenya. It is also understood and used as a second, third, or even fourth language by a considerable number of people throughout Eastern Africa and in parts of Southern and Central Africa.

Other members of the family include Kikuyu (Kenya), Chagga (Tanzania), Luganda (Uganda), Lingala and Kongo (Congo/Zaire), Chichewa (Malawi/Zambia), Bemba (Zambia), Shona (Zimbabwe), and Zulu and Xhosa (South Africa).

## Word order & stress

While totally unrelated to English, the structure of Swahili is similarly flexible and simple to understand, e.g.

**Faruk na Hadija wanakwenda nyumbani.**
Faruk and Hadija go home.

Stress is almost always on the second last syllable, e.g. **watu** (people), **karibu!** (welcome!), **habari!** (hello!), **Kiswahili** (Swahili language).

## Nouns

Swahili has no words for 'the', 'a' or 'an' — instead the meaning is understood from the context, e.g. **mtu** can mean 'the man', 'a man', or just simply 'man'.

Instead of having gender — like in Italian, French or Arabic — nouns in Swahili belong to 'classes', which function in a very similar way. Each class originally

consisted of nouns which shared similar characteristics: roundness, largeness, length, humanness, place, and so on.

Most of these distinctions have become blurred as the language developed. The class referring to human beings is predictable, the others are not. Each triggers a different prefix of agreement in many adjectives and all verbs. There are also different plural prefixes for each class. Some examples:

**M-** (pronounced like a short 'um') can refer to people, e.g. **mtu** 'man, person', **mke** 'wife', **mwanamke** 'woman', **mtoto** 'child', **Mswahili** 'Swahili person', **Mngereza** 'British person'.

**Wa** makes the plural form for people, e.g. **watu** 'men, people', **wake** 'wives', **wanawake** 'women', **watoto** 'children', **Waswahili** 'Swahili people', **Wangereza** 'British people'.

**Ki-** refers to things, e.g. **kitu** 'thing', **kikombe** 'cup', **kitanda** 'bed'. It can also be used to make languages, e.g. **Kiswahili** 'Swahili', **Kingereza** 'English'.

Although every word belongs to a class, many provide no clue as to which one, e.g. **gari** 'car', **samaki** 'fish', **bahari** 'sea, ocean'. Similar systems exist in languages across the world, such as Chinese, Japanese, and even Chechen. Here are a few examples that show the agreement of the classes using class prefixes:

**Mtu mrefu ni mkali.**
The tall person is fierce.
**Watu warefu ni wakali.**
The tall people are fierce.
**Kitabu changu kiko nyumbani.**
My book is at home. (*literally:* Book my is-there home-at)
**Vitabu vyangu viko nyumbani.**
My books are at home.

The human class is for 'those with souls' and it includes animals, but the other classes have lost many of their original classifications and aren't so easy to pigeonhole, so they can often be human, animal, vegetable, or mineral!

An instant summary showing when prefixes are and aren't used is as follows:

| | |
|---|---|
| **M/MW** | **WA** |
| **mtu** person | **watu** people |
| **mtu mkubwa** | **watu wakubwa** |
| big person | big people |
| **M/MW** | **MI** |
| **mji** town | **miji** towns |
| **mji mkubwa** | **miji mikubwa** |
| big town | big towns |
| **KI/CH** | **VI/VY** |
| **kitu** thing | **vitu** things |
| **kitu kikubwa** | **vitu vikubwa** |
| big thing | big things |
| **JI/J/–*** | **MA** |
| **jicho** eye | **macho** eyes |
| **jicho kubwa** | **macho makubwa** |
| big eye | big eyes |
| **basi** bus | **mabasi** buses |
| **basi kubwa** | **mabasi makubwa** |
| big bus | big buses |
| **N/–*** | **N/–*** |
| **njia** road | **njia** roads |
| **njia kubwa** | **njia kubwa** |
| big road | big roads |
| **U/W** | **N/–*/MA** |
| **uso** face | **nyuso** faces |
| **uso mkubwa** | **nyuso kubwa** |
| big face | big faces |

**uhuru** freedom *[no plural]*

* The '–' indicates that a noun has no prefix, e.g. **basi**.

**PA** *[used for places only, singular and plural]*
**pahali** place(s)
**pahali pakubwa**
big place(s)

**KU/KW** *[used for verb infinitives/nouns only]*
**kuwa** to be
**kwenda** to go

The word 'of' also changes: **mtu wa Tanzania** 'person of Tanzania', **watu wa Tanzania** 'people of Tanzania', **tamasha la Tanzania** 'festival of Tanzania', **chakula cha Tanzania** 'food of Tanzania', **vyakula vya Tanzania** 'foods of Tanzania', and so on.

## Adjectives

Adjectives always come after the noun. Some agree with the noun's class: **-zuri** 'good', **-kubwa** 'big', **-dogo** 'small', **-refu** 'long', e.g.

| | |
|---|---|
| **mtu mzuri** | nice person |
| **watu wazuri** | nice people |
| **kitu kizuri** | nice thing |
| **vitu vizuri** | nice things |

Some may not change at all: **ghali** 'expensive', **rahisi** 'cheap', e.g.

| | |
|---|---|
| **kitu ghali** | expensive thing |
| **vitu ghali** | expensive things |

## Adverbs

Some common adverbs:

| | |
|---|---|
| **vizuri** | well |
| **vibaya** | badly |
| **sasa** | now |
| **sasa hivi** | right now |

| | |
|---|---|
| **polepole** | slowly; carefully |
| **upesiupesi** | } quickly |
| **kwa haraka** | |

## Prepositions

Some common prepositions are:

| | |
|---|---|
| **katika** | in |
| **ndani ya** | inside |
| **juu ya** | on; above |
| **chini ya** | under |
| **kwa** | to; by; with |
| **kutoka** | from |

**Ni** 'in/at/on' is a particularly useful and flexible POSTposition (i.e. it comes after the noun), e.g. **nyumbani** (**nyumba** + **ni**) 'at home', or 'in the house'.

## Pronouns

Independent pronouns:

| | |
|---|---|
| **mimi** I | **sisi** we |
| **wewe** you *singular* | **ninyi*** you *plural* |
| **yeye** he/she | **wao** they |

Possessives:

| | |
|---|---|
| **-angu** my/mine | **-etu** our/ours |
| **-ako** your/yours *singular* | **-enu** your/yours *plural* |
| **-ake** his/her/hers | **-ao** their/theirs |

| | |
|---|---|
| **rafiki yangu** | my friend |
| **kitabu changu** | my book |
| **begi langu** | my bag |

Demonstratives also agree according to a noun's class.

* Another form you will hear is **nyie**.

A basic system is as follows:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *People:* | **huyu** this | **hawa** these |
| | **yule** that | **wale** those |
| *Things:* | **hii** this | **hizi** these |
| | **hiyo** that | **zile** those |

## Verbs

Verbs change for the usual tenses like English, but they also have a few interesting, quite distinct features. They add on prefixes for the personal pronouns, e.g. the subject pronouns:

| | |
|---|---|
| **ni-** I | **tu-** we |
| **u-** you *singular* | **m-** you *plural* |
| **a-** he/she | **wa-** they |

| | |
|---|---|
| **ninataka*** I want | **tunataka** we want |
| **unataka** you want | **mnataka** you want |
| **anataka** he/she wants | **wanataka** they want |

Verbs also add on a range of prefixes that agree with the singular and plural classes of 'it', e.g.

**Kidege kimeruka.**
The small bird has flown away.
**Videge vimereka.**
The small birds have flown away.
**Gari itaondoka sasa hivi.**
The car will leave right now.
**Gari ziotaondoka sasa hivi.**
The cars will leave right now.

Object pronouns are, for most part, similar to the subject pronouns. Here are the human forms:

| | |
|---|---|
| **-ni-** me | **-tu-** us |
| **-ku-** you *singular* | **-wa-** you *plural* |
| **-m-** him/her | **-wa-** them |

* Many speakers in conversation drop the **-na-** without change in meaning, e.g. **ninataka/nataka** both mean 'I want'.

The infinitive is formed by adding **ku-**, e.g. **kusoma** 'to read', **kusafiri** 'to travel', **kutuma** 'to send' (these also mean 'reading', 'traveling', 'sending'). The **ku-** is dropped in the other forms of the verb, e.g. **kusoma** 'to read', **ninasoma** 'I am reading'. Verbs with a single syllable, however, usually retain it to aid pronunciation: e.g. **kula** 'to eat', **ninakula** 'I am eating'; **kunywa** 'to drink', **ninakunywa** 'I am drinking'.

Tenses are created by adding prefixes to the verb such as **-na-** (present), **-ta-** (future), **-me-** (uncompleted past), **-li-** (completed past), e.g.

| | |
|---|---|
| **ninafahamu** | I understand/am understanding |
| **nitafahamu** | I shall understand |
| **nimefahamu** | I have understood* |
| **nilifahamu** | I understood/did understand |

There are several words that mean 'not' and so there are a variety of ways to make the negative. The most useful set of negative subject prefixes is:

| | |
|---|---|
| **si-** I do not | **hatu-** we do not |
| **hu-** you do not | **ham-** you do not |
| **ha-** he/she does not | **hawa-** they do not |

For 'it' simply add **ha-** to the relevant prefixes.

## Essential verbs

The verb 'to be' is expressed in a variety of ways. **Kuwa** generally means 'to be' with the sense of becoming:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Atakuwa daktari.** | He will be/become a doctor. |
| **Itakuwa baridi.** | It will be cold. |

Simpler forms are **ni** 'is/are' and **si** 'is not/are not', e.g.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Mimi ni daktari.** | I am a doctor. |
| **Mimi si daktari.** | I am not a doctor. |

Sometimes it's not necessary at all, i.e. **Mimi daktari** is

* This also means 'I understand' in idiomatic English.

just as correct as **Mimi ni daktari** — both mean 'I am a doctor.'

'To be in/at' uses **-ko/-po**:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Emma yupo?** | Is Emma in? |
| **Hayupo.** | No, she's not in. |
| **Yuko bichi.** | She's at the beach. |

The verb 'to have' is expressed with **kuwa na** (literally 'to be with'), but the simpler form **-na** exists when speaking in the present, e.g.

| | |
|---|---|
| **nina** I have | **tuna** we have |
| **una** you have *singular* | **mna** you have *plural* |
| **ana** he/she has | **wana** they have |

Examples:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Nina gari.** | I have a car. |
| **Tuna gari.** | We have a car. |

Form the negative by using the **si-**, **hu-**, **ha-**, etc., negative prefixes, e.g.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Sina gari.** | I don't have a car. |
| **Hatuna gari.** | We don't have a car. |

## Afternote...

Once you get used to the fact that it tends to add things at the beginning of the word and not at the end like in English, you'll soon realize the happy fact that Swahili is an incredibly regular language. This is something that has greatly helped towards its amazing spread as a world language.

Very occasionally, however, you'll come across some forms that do not appear to fit into this regularity, e.g. **mbili** 'two'/**watu wawili** 'two people', and **jino** 'tooth'/**meno** 'teeth'. Such instances are rare and invariably involve extremely common words.

Be prepared, also, for variants in spelling. Aside from

those mentioned in the Pronunciation Guide Notes on page 20, there are two main areas where this happens: instances such as **kwenda** ('to go') rather than the expected 'kuenda', and where an English word is a close alternative, e.g. **konseti** 'concert', **televisheni** 'television', **teksi** 'taxi', and **kuchekin** for 'to check in'. Sometimes only the English word and spelling is used.

The presence of English in East Africa should not be underestimated: you will frequently hear recognizably English words or expressions in everyday Swahili speech, particularly when dealing in areas such as travel, tourism, bureaucracy, and technology. Additionally, you will always encounter new words in Swahili that are constantly being coined by the media or technical centers.

# PRONUNCIATION GUIDE

| Swahili letter | Swahili example | English equivalent |
|---|---|---|
| **a** | **afya** 'health' | *pat* |
| **b** | **bahari** 'sea' | *box* |
| **ch** | **chai** 'tea' | *chair* |
| **d** | **duka** 'shop' | *dog* |
| **dh** | **dhoruba** 'storm' | *the* |
| **e** | **elfu** 'thousand' | *pay* |
| **f** | **fedha** 'money; silver' | *fox* |
| **g** | **gari** 'car' | *get* |
| **gh** | **magharibi** 'west' | *[see next page]* |
| **h** | **hewa** 'air' | *hat* |
| **i** | **mbili** 'two' | *feet* |
| **j** | **jua** 'sun' | *jet* |
| **k** | **kahawa** 'coffee' | *kick* |
| **l** | **kulala** 'to sleep' | *let* |
| **m** | **maji** 'water' | *mat* |
| | **mji** 'town' | *[see next page]* |
| **n** | **neno** 'word' | *net* |
| | **ndege** 'bird' | *[see next page]* |
| **ng'** | **ng'ombe** 'cow' | *sing* |
| **o** | **ofisi** 'office' | *more* |
| **p** | **papa** 'shark' | *pet* |
| **r** | **raisi** 'president' | *rat* * |
| **s** | **sasa** 'now' | *sit* |
| **sh** | **kushika** 'to take' | *shut* |
| **t** | **teksi** 'taxi' | *ten* |
| **th** | **thelathini** 'thirty' | *breath* |
| **u** | **uhuru** 'freedom' | *soon* |
| **v** | **vizuri** 'well' | *van* |
| **w** | **watu** 'people' | *well* |
| **y** | **yai** 'egg' | *yet* |
| **z** | **zadi** 'more' | *zebra* |

* Softly 'rolled' or even 'flapped'.

Nothing beats listening to a native speaker, but the following notes should give you some idea of how to pronounce the following letters.

## Vowels...

Note that vowels are always pronounced separately of each other but with a smooth join of the sounds, e.g. **oa** — '**o-a**' (marry!), **kituo** — '**ki-tu-o**' (station), **mzee** — '**m-ze-e**' (old; old person), **saa** — '**sa-a**' (hour; o'clock),

## Consonants...

**kh** is not listed above but is found particularly in the speech and spelling of coastal speakers. It is the rasping 'ch' in Sottish 'loch' and German 'ach'. It is also pronounced like the Spanish/Castillian 'jota' (= Arabic/Persian خ). It tends to be pronounced and spelled as **h** or possibly **k**.

**gh** is pronounced like a sort of light growl in the back of your throat—like when you're gargling. The German or Parisian 'r' is the easy European equivalent (= Arabic غ). It tends to be pronounced and spelled as **g**.

**ny** is pronounced together, as in 'o**ni**on', e.g. **nyama** 'meat'. By extension, **nywa** 'drink!' is pronounced as a single syllable.

**m/n** also represent single syllables pronounced like a shorter English 'um' (like when you say 'mm!' to mean 'yes!' or 'nice!') and 'un' (between 'unlocked' and 'inhale') respectively, e.g. **mtu** 'person' is pronounced '**um-tu**', **ndege** 'bird' is '**un-de-ge**'.

## Notes...

◆ The letters **c** (by itself, not as in **ch**), **q**, and **x** are used only in foreign words and place names.

◆ Although not significant, there is a certain flexibility in spelling and/or pronunciation of Swahili, affected also by the wide range of regional variations — much like the difference between the American and British forms of English. As well as the variants listed above, note the substitution of **z** for **dh**, **s** for **th**, the interchangeability of **r** and **l**, e.g. **chandarua/ chandalua** 'mosquito net', and that many speakers, as speakers do in some forms of English, drop **l** or **h** in certain positions in a word. There is also a certain interchangeability (not always correct) between **mw**, **m** and **mu**.

# SWAHILI Dictionary

## Note

—Verbs in the Swahili-English section are listed as stems only, e.g. **-shinda**. Add **ku-** to make the infinitive, e.g. **kushinda**.

—Verbs in the English-Swahili section are listed as infinitives, e.g. **kushinda**. Take away the **ku-** to create the stem, e.g. **-shinda**.

— Verbs with single syllables always keep the **ku-** regardless, e.g. **kuja** 'to go'.

# SWAHILI-ENGLISH
# KISWAHILI-KINGEREZA

## A

**abiria** passenger
**-acha** to quit; to desert
**adabu** etiquette
**adapta** adapter
**adhabu** torture
**-adhibu** to torture
**adui** enemy
**Agosti** August
**ahsante!** thank you!
**aina** type; **aina gani?** what kind?
**airconditioner** air conditioner; air conditioning
**aisikrim** ice cream
**ajali** accident
**akili** common sense
**akiolojia** archeology
**alama** mark; symbol; **alama ya njia** road sign
**alfajiri** dawn; sunrise
**Alkhamisi** Thursday
**-alika** to invite
**aliyojeruhiwa** victim
**Alkhamisi** Thursday
**Allah** God
**amani** peace
**-amini** to believe
**-amka** to wake; to be awake
**amri** order
**-amrisha** to order *someone*
**-amuwa** to decide
**-andika** to write
**andika** writing
**-anguka** to fall
**antiseptiki** antiseptic
**anuwani** address
**anwani ya e-mail** e-mail address
**-anza** to begin
**Aprili** April
**ardhi** earth; floor; ground; land
**arubaini** forty
**asali** honey
**asante!** thank you!
**asili** origin
**askari** policeman; guard; nightwatchman; **askari kanzu** secret police; **askari wa jeshi** soldier; **askari wa malipo** mercenary; **askari wa mpaka** border guard; **askari wa raisi** presidential guard; **askari wa trafik** traffic police
**aspirini** aspirin
**asubuhi** morning; **asubuhi ya leo** morning: this morning
**ateri** artery
**au** or
**auns** ounce
**Australia** Australia
**-azima** to borrow; to lend

## B

**baa** bar; pub
**baada (ya)** after; **baada ya chakula** after supper
**baadala** therefore

**baadaye** afterwards
**baadhi** several; some
**baba** father
**-babaika** to confuse
**babu** grandfather
**badala** instead
**-badilisha** to change; to exchange
**-badilisha ndege** to transfer flights
**bado** still; yet; **bado kidogo** not yet
**Baharani** Iranian
**bahari** sea
**bahasha** envelope; package; parcel
**bahati** luck
**bajeti** budget
**bakteria** bacteria
**balaa** disaster
**balozi** ambassador
**bampa** bumper; fender
**banda la ndege** hangar
**bandia** artificial; counterfeit; false
**bangili** bracelet
**Baniani** Hindu
**banzi** splint *medical*
**Bara Hindi** India
**barabara kuu** motorway; highway
**barafu** frost; ice
**baridi** cold; cool; coolness; **baridi sana** freezing
**barua** letter; mail; **barua inokwenda kwa ndege** air mail; **barua ya regista** registered mail
**baruti** explosives
**basi** bus
**basi!** enough!
**baskeli** bicycle
**basketboli** basketball
**bastola ya mkono** pistol
**bata** duck; goose
**bata mzinga** turkey
**bawa** wing
**bedshiti** sheet
**bega** shoulder
**begi** bag; suitcase; **begi la mgongoni** backpack
**behewa** balcony
**bei** cost; price; **bei gani?** how much does it cost?
**benki** bank
**beseni** basin
**betri** battery
**Bi** Miss
**bia** beer
**biashara** business
**bibi** grandmother
**Bibi** Mrs.
**Biblia** Bible
**bichi** beach
**bidii** enterprise
**bila ya** without; **bila ya kazi** unemployed; **bila ya kosa** innocent; **bila ya raha** uncomfortable; **bila ya rangi** colorless; **bila ya sukari** no sugar; **bila ya ushuru** tax-free
**bilauri** glass
**bili** bill
**bima** insurance; **bima ya siha** medical insurance
**binaadamu** human
**bisibisi** screwdriver
**blangeti** blanket; **blangeti jengine** an extra blanket
**boga** pumpkin
**boksi** box; **boksi la barua** mailbox
**bomani** garrison
**bomba** carton; pipe; **bomba ya mafuta** oil pipeline
**bomu** bomb; **bomu lisoripuka** unexploded bomb
**bonde** valley
**Bonde la Ufa** Rift Valley

**boneti** bonnet/hood *of car*
**bora sana** excellent
**bosi** boss; head
**brashi** brush; **brashi ya nywele** hairbrush
**breki** brake
**brochi** brooch
**buibui** spider
**buku** book
**buli** kettle
**buluu** blue
**bunduki** gun; rifle
**bunge** cabinet; parliament
**bunju** owl
**bure** free (of charge)
**burudani** fresh; cool
**-burura** to drag
**busara** wisdom
**bustani** garden; park
**-busu** to kiss
**buti** trunk *of car*
**Bwana** Mr.
**bwana nyama** game park warden
**bwawa** pool; swimming pool; marsh
**bwawani** river bank
**-bweka** to bark

# CH

**chafu** dirty
**-chaguwa** to choose; to elect
**chai** tea; **chai na limau** tea with lemon; **chai ya maziwa** tea with milk
**chai ya asubuhi** breakfast
**chakleti** chocolate
**cha kukamatia** handle
**cha kukatia makucha** nail-clippers
**cha kuwekea mshumaa** candlestick
**chakula** food; meal; **chakula cha kununua** take-away food/take-out food; **chakula cha mchana** lunch; **chakula cha usiku** dinner/supper
**chale** clown; comedian
**chama cha misaada** charity organization
**chama cha siasa** party *political*
**chama cha wafanyakazi** trade union
**-chana** to tear
**chandaruwa** mosquito net
**chanel ya televisheni** t.v. channel
**changarawe** gravel
**-chanja** to vaccinate
**chanja** vaccination
**chanzo** cause
**-chapa** to print
**-chapisha** to publish
**chawa** louse/lice
**cheche** weasel
**-cheka** to laugh
**cheki za msafiri** traveler's checks
**-chelewa** to be late; to be delayed
**chemchem** spring *of water*
**-chemsha** to boil
**cherahani** sewing machine
**chess** chess
**cheti cha kuzaliwa** birth certificate
**-cheza** to dance; to perform
**chifu** chief
**-chimba** to dig; to drill
**-chimba kisima** to drill a well
**China** China
**chini** under; below; down; bottom; low; deep
**chini sana** deep

**chini ya** below; under; **chini ya ardhi** underground; **chini wa raisi** vice-president
**chips** french fries
**chizi** cheese
**-choka** to tire
**-choma** to sting
**chombo** container; **chombo cha sauti** sound equipment
**choo** bathroom; toilet
**chopri** cigarette papers
**-chora** to draw
**chozi** tear (drop)
**-chukia** to hate
**-chukuwa** to take; to carry
**chuma** metal; steel
**chumba** room; **chumba cha kulala** bedroom; **chumba cha kulia** dining room; **chumba cha mkutano** conference room; **chumba cha mshika fedha** cashier's booth; **chumba cha mtu mmoja** single room; **chumba cha watu wawili** double room; **chumba cha upasuaji** operating theater/room
**chumvi** salt
**chumvichumvi** salty
**chungio** filter
**chungu** bitter; sour
**-chungua** to find out; to examine *medically*
**-chunguza** to investigate
**-chunika** to bruise
**chuo** college; academy; madrasa; **chuo kikuu** university
**chupa** bottle; **chupa la gesi** butane canister; **chupa nyengine** another bottle; **chupa ya bia** bottle of beer; **chupa ya gesi** gas bottle/container; **chupa ya maji** bottle of water; **chupa ya mvinyo** bottle of wine
**chura** frog

# D

**dada** sister
**daima** always
**dainamo** dynamo
**dakika** minute; moment
**daktari** doctor; **daktari wa meno** dentist; **daktari wa operesheni** surgeon
**dalili ya magonjwa** symptom
**damu** blood
**danganyifu** treacherous
**daraja** bridge
**darubini** binoculars; telescope
**dawa** drug; medicine; medication; cure; **dawa ya kukoshea nywele** shampoo; **dawa ya kuondowa harufu kwapani** deodorant; **dawa ya kutuliza** tranquilizer; **dawa ya kuvunja maumivu** painkiller; **dawa ya mswaki** toothpaste
**demokrasia** democracy
**deni** debt
**dereva** driver
**Desemba** December
**deski** desk
**desturi** custom; tradition
**dhahabu** gold
**dhaifu** weak
**dhamiri** goal *aim*
**dharura** emergency
**dhoruba** storm
**dikteta** dictator
**dini** religion
**dipo** depot
**dira** compass
**dirisha** window
**disel** diesel

**disko** disco; nightclub
**dobi** laundry
**dola** dollar
**dondandugu** cancer
**duara** circle
**duka** shop; store; **duka la ghorofa** department store; **duka la kuuza maziwa** dairy; **duka la madawa** pharmacy
**duka la magazeti** newsstand
**duka la maua** florist
**duka la mboga** greengrocer; vegetable shop
**duka la nguo** clothes shop
**duka la nyama** butcher's; **duka la spea za gari** auto spares shop; **duka la spea za gari** car spares store; **duka la uchapishaji** printer's; **duka la urembo** beauty salon; **duka la viatu** shoeshop; **duka la vifaa vy nyumba** hardware store; **duka la vifaa vya ofisini** stationer's; **duka la vifaa vya umeme** electrical goods store; **duka la vitabu** bookshop/bookstore
**dunia** world

# E

**eksosti** exhaust; muffler
**-elea** to float
**-elekea** to be likely
**-elemea** to lean
**-eleza** to explain
**-elezea** to describe
**elfu** thousand
**elimu** education
**e-mail** e-mail
**-endelea** to continue
**-endesha** to drive
**-endesha kwa tanga** to sail
**eneo** area; district; territory
**-engeza** to add
**enye maana** significant
**-enyewe** own *adjective*
**enzi** era
**euro** euro *currency*

# F

**-fagia** to sweep
**-fahamu** to understand
**faida** interest *financial*
**faili** file *paper*
**faili la kompyuta** file *computer*
**faini** fine *of money*
**-fanana** to be similar
**fanicha** furniture
**-fanya** to do; to make
**-fanya bora** to improve
**-fanya kazi** to work
**-fanya makosa** to make a mistake
**-fanya refu** to lengthen
**-fanya vita** to wage war
**faranga** franc
**farasi** horse; **farasi dume** stallion; **farasi jike** mare; **farasi mdogo** pony
**fasihi** literature
**fasti edi** first aid
**fasti klasi** first class
**faulu** success
**-faulu** to win
**Februari** February
**fedha** money; currency; finance; silver
**fedhuli** rude
**feksi** fax
**feri** ferry
**-ficha** to hide
**fidia** compensation
**-fika** to arrive
**-fikiri** to think

**fikra** idea; thought
**filamu; filmu** film
**fimbo** stick
**fizikia** physics
**fleti** apartment
**fomu** form *official*
**fotokopi** photocopy *noun*
**friji** fridge; refrigerator
**fruti** fruit
**-fua** to wash *clothes*
**fujo** riot
**fuko la uzazi** womb
**-fukuza** to chase; to expel
**-fukuza kazi** to sack
**-fukuza nchini** to deport
**fundi wa gari** mechanic
**fundi wa saa** watchmaker's
**-funga** to close; to lock; to tie; to wrap
**-funga goli** score *verb*
**funga uzazi** birth control
**fungate ya harusi** honeymoon
**fungu** share
**-fungua** to open
**-fungwa** to be closed
**fupa** bone
**fupa la nyonga** pelvis
**fupi** short
**furaha** happy
**furushi** package
**futboli** football; soccer
**futi** foot *measurement*
**fyekeo** scythe

# G

**galon** gallon
**ganda kwa baridi** freeze
**-gandisha** to stick
**gangarini** gangrene
**gari** car; **gari la kuchukuwa mafuta** oil tanker; **gari la mizigo** van; **gari la wagonjwa** ambulance; **gari ya kulala** sleeping car
**gati** port
**gatini** dock; harbor
**-gawa** to divide
**gazeti** newspaper; **gazeti la Kingereza** newspaper in English
**geni** strange
**gereji** garage
**gesi** gas
**gesti-house** guesthouse
**-geukia** to betray
**ghafula** suddenly
**-ghairisha** to cancel
**ghala** store; storeroom; **ghala ya mafuta** fuel dump
**ghali** expensive
**ghasia** noise
**ghorofa** floor; story
**ghuba** bay
**gia** gear
**gilasi** glass; **gilasi ya maji** glass of water
**giza** dark; darkness
**glavu** gloves
**globu** lightbulb
**godoro** mattress
**gofu** golf
**goli** goal
**-goma** to strike *from work*
**-gonga** to knock
**goti** knee
**gramu** gram
**gundi** gum
**gunia** sack
**gurudumu** wheel

# H

**habari** news; information; **habari ya asubuhi!** good morning!; **habari za jioni!**

good evening!; **habari za mchana!** good afternoon!
**hadithi** story; **hadithi ya kuendelea** radio/TV series
**hai** live
**haina ladha** tasteless
**haiwezekani** impossible
**haki** right; **haki za binaadamu** human rights; **haki za raia** civil rights
**hakika** certain; sure
**hakimu** judge
**hakuna** there is no/not; **hakuna malipo** free of charge; **hakuna matata!** no problem!; **hakuna mtu** nobody; **hakuna ruhusa kupita** no entry; **hakuna ruhusa kuvuta sigara** no smoking
**halafu** then
**hali** state; condition; situation
**hali ya hewa** weather; climate
**halisi** actual
**halmashauri** council; **halmashauri ya jiji** town hall
**hamaki** angry
**hambaga** hamburger
**hamna** there is not; **Hamna joto.** The temperature is low.; **Hamna neno!** It doesn't matter!
**hamsini** fifty
**hamu** interest
**hanchifu** napkin
**handaki** tunnel
**hapa** here; **hapa hapa mjini** around town; **Hapa panauma.** It hurts here.
**hapana kitu** nothing
**hapo kale** long ago
**haraka** quick; rapid
**haramia** pirate
**haramu** illegal
**-haribu** to spoil; to destroy
**hariri** silk
**harufu** smell
**hatari** danger; risk
**hazina** treasury
**hedhi** period *menstrual*
**hela** money
**helikopta** helicopter
**hema** tent
**henga** hanger
**hepatitis** hepatitis
**herini** earrings
**herufi** alphabet
**hesabu** mathematics
**heshima** polite
**hewa** air; oxygen
**-hifadhi** to protect; to save
**hifadhi ya wanyama** game reserve/park
**hii** this
**-hisabu** to count
**-hisi** to feel
**historia** history
**-hitaji** to need
**hivi karibuni** recently
**hivyo** such
**hiyo** it
**hizi** these
**homa** fever; **homa ya flu/mafua** influenza/flu
**hongera!** cheers!
**hospitali** hospital
**hosteli** hostel
**hoteli** hotel; hostel; restaurant; café; bar
**huduma** service; **huduma za chumba** room service; **huduma za siha** healthcare
**hujambo!** hello!
**hukumu** justice
**hundi** check *bank*
**huru** free; independent; autonomous
**huzuni** sad

# I

**-iba** to rob; to steal
**idadi ya watu** population
**igiza** to copy
**Ijumaa** Friday
**ikiwezekana** if possible
**iko wapi?** where is?
**ikoje?** what kind?
**Ikweta** Equator
**ile** that
**iliyo kwajuka** pale
**iliyokamilika** perfect
**iliyonyoka** straight
**iliyopita** past; previously
**ilobaki** rest *remainder*
**ilochacha** stale
**ilokwisha tumiwa** second-hand
**imaji** wet
**imamu** imam; mullah
**imani** kind
**-imba** to sing
**-imebidi** have to; must
**imechelewa** delayed
**imeibiwa** stolen
**imekatazwa** forbidden
**imetosheleza** satisfied
**ina ladha** tasty
**ina yumkin** it is probable
**inatosha!** that's enough!
**inayofaa** suitable
**India** India
**indiketa** indicator light
**ingawa; ingawaje** although; however
**-ingia** to enter
**-ingiza** to import
**ini** kidney
**injin** engine
**inotumika** useful
**insha** essay
**internet** internet
**-inuka** to rise
**ipi?** which?
**Iran** Iran
**Ireland** Ireland
**ishara** sign
**ishirini** twenty
**isimu** linguistics
**isiojulikana** unknown
**isipokuwa** except (for)...; unless
**Islam** Islam
**isokoza** light
**Israili** Israel
**Istiwai** Equator
**Ita polisi!** Call the police!
**Italy** Italy
**-itwa** to be called

# J

**-jaa** to be full
**jabali** rock
**-jadili** to discuss
**jagi** vase
**jaki** jack *for a car*
**jamaa** relative
**jambazi** bandit; criminal
**jambia** dagger
**jamhuri** republic
**jamii** family; community; society; variety
**jana** yesterday
**jangili** game poacher
**jangwa** desert
**jani** leaf
**januari** January
**Japan** Japan
**jaraha** wound
**jaribio** test
**-jaribu** to try
**jasho** sweat
**jasusi** spy
**jawabu** answer

**-jaza** to fill
**-jaza fomu** to fill in a form
**jazz** jazz
**jela** prison
**jenerali** general
**-jenga** to build
**jengo** building
**jengo la ukumbusho** monument
**jeraha la kichwa** concussion *medical*
**-jeruhi** to wound
**Jerumani** Germany
**jeshi** army; troops; **jeshi la amani** peace-keeping troops; **jeshi la anga** air force; **jeshi la uvamizi** occupying forces
**jibu** reply
**-jibu** to answer; to reply
**jicho** eye
**jiko** cooker; stove
**jikoni** kitchen
**jimbo** state *in federation*
**jina** name; noun; **jina la babu** surname; **Jina lako nani?** What is your name?; **Jina langu Fred.** My name is Fred.
**jino** tooth
**jinsia** sex *gender*
**jioni** evening
**jipu** boil
**jirani** neighbor
**-jivunia** to be proud
**jiwe** stone; rock
**jogoo** rooster
**joto** heat; hot; **joto kali** severe heat; **Joto.** It is hot.
**jua** sun
**-jua** to know
**-julisha** to introduce
**Julai** July
**jumba la mafleti** apartment block
**Jumamosi** Saturday
**Jumanne** Tuesday
**Jumapili** Sunday
**Jumatano** Wednesday
**Jumatatu** Monday
**Jumuia ya Madola** Commonwealth
**Juni** June
**jungwa** orange
**juu** up; top; high
**juu ya** on; onto
**juzi** the day before yesterday

# K

**-kaa** to sit; to dwell; to stay
**kabati** cupboard; cabinet
**kabeji** cabbage
**kabla (ya)** before
**kaburi** grave; tomb; **kaburi kubwa** mausoleum
**kachumbari** salad
**kadi** card; **kadi ya mkopo** credit card
**kadiri** range
**kagua** survey
**-kagua** to survey
**kahawa** coffee; **kahawa ya maziwa** coffee with milk
**kahawia** brown
**kalamu** pen; ballpoint
**kale** ancient
**kali** severe; sharp
**kama** if; like; **kama hivi** like this; **kama vile** like that; **kama inawezekana** if possible
**kamata** to catch; to seize; to arrest
**kamba** rope; lead; **kamba ya kuvutia** tow rope
**kambi** camp; camping; **kambi ya majeshi** barracks
**kamera** camera
**kampasi** campus

**kamusi** dictionary
**kamwe** never
**Kanada** Canada
**kanda** tape; **kanda ya video** video cassette
**kanisa** church
**kansa** cancer
**kanzu** dress
**karamu kubwa** banquet
**karatasi** paper; a piece of paper; **karatasi ya chooni** toilet paper; **karatasi ya kuandikia** writing paper
**karavani** caravan
**karibu** soon
**karibu!** come in!; welcome! *said to one person*
**karibu na** by
**karibu (ya)** near; beside; **karibu sana** nearby
**karibuni!** come in!; welcome! *said to more than one person*
**karne** century
**karo** sink
**kaseti** cassette
**kasino** casino
**-kasirishwa** to be annoyed
**kasisi** priest
**kaskazini** north
**kasri** castle; palace
**kastamu** customs *border*
**-kata** to cut; to chop; to saw
**-kataza** to forbid
**kati** center; middle; **kati ya mji** city center
**kati (ya)** between
**katiba ya nchi** constitution
**katili** cruel
**kaunta** counter; **kaunta ya kuchekin** check-in counter; **kaunta ya mabegi** baggage counter
**kaure; kauri** shell
**kawaida** normal; ordinary; usual
**kazi** work; job; occupation; profession; **kazi ya mkono** handicraft
**kebo** cable
**kechap** ketchup
**kelele** loud
**kemikal** chemical
**kemistri** chemistry
**kemwe** jaw
**kengele** bell; **kengele ya kuamsha** wake-up call
**kesho** tomorrow; **kesho kutwa** the day after tomorrow
**kesi** trial *legal*
**khasama** feud
**khofu** fear
**kiambaza** wall
**Kiarabu** Arabic *language*
**kiasi** about; almost; approximately; part; portion; amount; **kiasi gani?** how much/many?; **kiasi meli hamsini** about 50 miles
**kiatu** shoe
**kiazi** potato
**Kibaharani** Farsi *language*
**kibali** pass; **kibali cha gari** car papers/registration; **kibali cha kuendesha gari** driving license
**kibanda** kiosk
**kibiriti** matches; lighter; **Unacho kibiriti?** Do you have a light?
**kiburi** pride
**kichaa cha mbwa** rabies
**kichapuzi** accelerator
**kichekesho** joke
**kichwa** head
**Kidachi** Dutch *language*
**kidani** necklace
**Kidenish** Danish *language*
**kidevu** chin
**kidogo** little; bit; less; **kidogo**

**sana** a little bit; too little; **kidogo tu** little bit
**kidole** finger; toe; **kidole cha mguu** toe; **kidole gumba** thumb
**kidonge** pill; tablet
**kifaa** equipment; appliance
**kifafa** epilepsy
**kifani** model
**Kifaransa** French *language*
**Kifarsi** Farsi *language*
**kifaru** armored car; tank
**kifo** death
**kifundo; kifundo cha mguu** ankle
**kifusi** rubble
**kifuwa** chest *body*
**kigae** glass
**kiganja** hand; wrist
**Kigiriki** Greek *language*
**kihenge** barn
**Kiirish** Irish *language*
**kijana** young; young person; boy
**kijani** green
**Kijapani** Japanese *language*
**kijembe** razor; **kijembe cha kunyolea ndevu** razor blade
**Kijerumani** German *language*
**kijiji** village
**kijiko** spoon; **kijiko cha chai** teaspoon
**kijiti cha kuchokolea meno** toothpick
**kikao** session
**kikapu** basket
**kiko** pipe *smoking*
**kikombe** cup
**kikomo** limit
**kikosi cha anga** airforce
**kikosi cha bahari** navy
**kila; kila moja** each
**kilele** peak; summit
**kilimo** agriculture
**kilo** kilogram
**kilomita** kilometer
**-kimbia** to run; to flee; to escape
**kimya** quiet; silent; silence
**kinamasi** swamp
**Kingereza** English *language*
**kinu** mill
**kinyozi** barber's; hairdresser
**kinywaji** drink
**kioo** mirror; **kioo cha dirisha cha gari** windshield
**kipaa** shelter; **kipaa cha gari** hood/bonnet *of car*
**kipepeo** butterfly
**kipimo** size
**kipindi cha redio** radio program
**kipofu** blind
**kipulefti** roundabout
**kiriri** podium
**kiroboto** flea
**Kirusi** Russian *language*
**kisahani cha jivu la sigara** ashtray
**kishoka** pickax
**kisima** well; **kisima cha gesi** gas well; **kisima cha mafuta** oil well
**Kispanish** Spanish *language*
**kisu** knife; **kisu cha kukunja** penknife
**kisugudi** elbow
**kisukari** diabetes
**kitabu** book; **kitabu cha hadithi** novel; **kitabu cha hadithi za Kingereza** novels in English; **kitabu cha kuandikia** notebook; **kitabu cha mwongozo** manual; **kitabu cha orodha** directory; **kitabu cha ramani** atlas; **kitabu cha ramani** guidebook
**kitafunio** snack

# Kitaliana

**Kitaliana** Italian *language*
**kitambaa** material; cloth
**kitambaa cha meza** tablecloth
**kitambulisho** identification; I.D.
**kitana** comb
**kitanda** bed; **kitanda cha watu wawili** double bed
**kitanzi ya hospitali** sling *medical*
**kitasa** lock; **kitasa cha mlango** doorlock
**kitenzi** verb
**kiti** chair; seat; **kiti cha enzi** throne; **kiti cha jimbo** seat *political*; **kiti cha magurudumu** wheelchair
**kitu** thing
**kitunguu** garlic
**kituo** station; base; **kituo cha basi** bus station; **kituo cha basi** bus stop; **kituo cha mji** quarter; area; **kituo cha polisi** police station; **kituo cha redio** radio station; **kituo cha treni** train station
**Kituruki** Turkish *language*
**kiu** thirsty
**kiua wa dudu** insecticide
**kivukoni** border crossing
**kivuli** shade
**kivunjabarafu** antifreeze
**kivunjasumu** antibiotic
**kivuno nafaka** combine harvester
**kiwanda** factory; industry; **kiwanda cha kusafisha** refinery
**kiwavi** caterpillar
**kiwewe** trauma
**kiziwi** deaf
**Kizungu** English
**kizuri** beautiful *thing*
**klabu** club
**klachi** clutch *of car*
**klasi** class; **klasi ya business ya ndege** business class
**kliniki** clinic
**kodi** hire; tax; code; **kodi ya international** international code; **kodi ya kastam** customs duty; **kodi ya simu ya Zanzibar** dialing code for Zanzibar; **kodi ya simu za nje** international code
**-kodi** to hire; to rent
**kofia** hat
**-koga** to wash *body*
**-kohowa** to cough
**kohozi** cough
**koili ya kupasha moto** heating coil
**kolera** cholera
**kombora** canister; missile
**kompyuta** computer; **kompyuta ndogo** laptop computer
**kona** corner
**kondom** condom
**kondoo** sheep; lamb
**kondoo dume** ram
**konokono** snail
**konseti** concert
**konsuleti** consulate
**konyagi** cognac
**koo** throat
**kopi** copy
**kopo** can/tin; canister
**korongo** ravine
**korti** law court
**-kosa** to miss
**-kosha** to wash *things*
**koti** coat; jacket; **koti la baridi** overcoat
**kremu ya kunyolea ndevu** shaving cream
**kreni** crane; derrick

**Krismasi** Christmas
**-kubali** to yield
**-kubali kufanya** to undertake
**kubwa** big; great; main; **kubwa kabisa** biggest; **kubwa sana** biggest; greatest
**kucha** finger nail
**kucheza** dance; dancing
**kufa** to die
**kufikia** arrivals
**kufuli** padlock
**kuingia** check-in
**kuingiliano ya kimwili** sex
**kuja** to come
**kujitawala** autonomy
**kukata kiungo** amputation
**kuku** chicken; hen
**kukuza** development
**kula** to eat
**kula kiapo** to swear an oath
**kule** there
**kulia** right *side*
**kuliko** than
**kumbukumbu** memory
**kumi** ten
**kumi na mbili** twelve
**kumi na moja** eleven
**kumi na nane** eighteen
**kumi na nne** fourteen
**kumi na saba** seventeen
**kumi na sita** sixteen
**kumi na tano** fifteen
**kumi na tatu** thirteen
**kumi na tisa** nineteen
**kuna** there is; it is; **kuna baridi** it is cold; **kuna juwa** it is sunny
**kunajisi kimwili** rape
**kundi** group; flock; herd; **kundi la damu** blood group
**kunguru** crow *bird*
**kuni** firewood
**kunywa** to drink
**kuogolea** swimming
**kuona** eyesight
**kuondoka** departures
**kuotesha miti** planting
**kuoza** septic
**kupaka rangi** painting
**kupanda farasi** horseback riding
**kupe** tick *insect*
**kupinga maendeleo** reactionary
**kupita** through
**kupotoa** corruption
**kura** vote; **kura ya kukataza** veto
**Kurani** Koran
**kusanyiko** assembly
**kushambulia kwa mabomu** bombardment
**kushindwa** failure
**kushoto** left
**kusimamisha mapigano** ceasefire
**kusimamisha vita** truce
**kusini** south *noun*
**kusoma** reading
**kustarehesha** comfortable
**-kusudia** to intend
**kuteka nyara** hijacking; kidnapping
**kutia damu** blood transfusion
**kutoka wapi?** where from?
**kutu** rust
**kuumba** invention
**kuunganisha** unification
**kuvamia** invasion
**kuvua** fishing
**kuvuta sigara** smoking
**kuwa** be; become; grow; **kuwa hai** to be alive; **kuwa mkubwa** to grow up; **kuwa na hamu** to desire; **kuwa na** to own; **kuwa na wasiwasi** worried: to be worried; **kuwa nayo** to have
**kuziba choo** constipation
**kwa** for; by; **kwa bahati mbaya**

unfortunately; **kwa basi** by bus; **kwa hakika** sure; **kwa haraka** express; **kwa heri!** good-bye!; **kwa kawaida** usually; **kwa kelele** loudly; **kwa mujibu wa** according to; **kwa namna fulani** somehow; **kwa nini?** why?; **kwa posta** by post; **kwa sababu** for that reason; **kwa sababu (ya)** because (of); **kwa uhakika** certainly; **kwa utaratibu** slowly; **kwa yote** general

**kwanza** beginning
**kwaya** choir
**kweli** very; real; true; serious
**kwenda** to go; **kwenda kulala** to go to bed; **kwenda nje** to go out
**kwenda dukani** shopping
**kwisha** to end; to finish; to run out

# L

**laasiri** afternoon
**labda** maybe; perhaps; probably
**ladha** taste
**lafdhi** accent
**lahaja** dialect
**laini** soft
**laita** lighter
**lakini** but
**-lala** to sleep; **-lala chini** to lie down
**lala salama!** night: good night!
**-lalamika** to complain
**lambo** dam
**lango** gate
**lazima** it's necessary
**Lebanan** Lebanon
**lebo** laboratory
**lemau** citrus
**lenzi** lens; **lenzi za plastiki** contact lenses
**leo** today; **leo mchana** this afternoon; **leo usiku** tonight
**leseni** driver's license
**lete** bring
**-lewa** to be drunk
**-lia** to cry; to weep
**Libnan** Lebanon
**lifti** lift/elevator
**likizo** holiday; vacation
**-lima** to plow
**limau** lemon
**-linda** to defend; to guard
**-linganisha** to compare
**lini?** when?
**-lipa** to pay
**-lisha** to feed
**lita** liter
**lugha** language
**lulu** pearl

# M

**-m-** him; her
**maafa** natural disaster
**maagizo** message
**maambukizo** infection
**maana** meaning; sense
**maandamano** demonstration *political*
**maandishi** text
**maarufu** well-known; famous
**mababu wa mababu** ancestors
**mabegi** baggage
**mabomu** mine *explosive*
**machera** stretcher
**machi** March
**macho** eyes
**machofu** tired
**madini** mine; mineral

**maelezo** explanation
**mafla** scarf
**mafuriko** flood
**mafuta** oil; fat; fuel; **mafuta mazuri** perfume; **mafuta ya kibiriti** lighter fluid; **mafuta ya kupikia** cooking oil; **mafuta yaliyo mwagika** oil spill
**mafuwa** cold *medical*
**magazeti** magazine
**magendo** black market
**magharibi** sunset; west; western
**magofu** ruins
**magonjwa ya mlipuko** epidemic
**magonjwa ya sehemu za siri** venereal disease
**mahakama** court *law*
**maharagwe** beans
**mahifadhi** protection
**mahindi** corn; maize
**mahojio** interview
**maini** liver
**maisha** life
**majadiliano** discussion
**majamaa** relatives
**majani** grass
**majaribu** trial *test*
**majeruhi** victims
**maji** water; **maji ya baridi** cold water; **maji ya chemchem** mineral water; **maji ya chupa** water bottle; juice **maji ya kunywa** drinking water; **maji ya moto** hot water; **maji matamu** fruit juice; **maji ya fruti** fruit; **Maji yamefungwa.** The water has been cut off.
**majira** period; season; **majira ya joto** summer; **majira ya baridi** winter
**majonzi** unhappy
**makaburini** cemetery
**makala** article; review; **makala ya gazeti** newspaper article
**makao makuu** headquarters
**makelele** noisy
**maki** mark *currency*
**makosa** mistake
**maktaba** library
**makumbusho** museum
**malalamiko** complaint
**malaria** malaria
**maliasili** natural resources
**malipo** pay; payment; **malipo ya uwanja wa ndege** airport tax
**malkia** queen
**mama** mother
**mamalia** mammal
**mandhari** view
**mangapi: Mangapi kwa mangapi?** What's the score?
**manispaa** city hall
**manjano** yellow
**maonyesho** exhibition; show
**mapacha** twins
**mapafu** lung
**mapema** early
**mapigano** battle
**mapinduzi** coup d'etat; revolution
**maporomoko ya ardhi** landslide
**mapumziko** rest; break; interval
**mara** time; **mara moja** once; **mara mbili** twice; **mara tatu** three times; **mara kwa mara** often; **mara nyengine** sometimes
**maradhi** illness; disease; **maradhi ya mgongo** backache; **maradhi ya moyo** heart attack; heart condition
**Marekani** America; U.S.A.

**marikiti; markiti** market
**masafa** distant; yard *distance*
**mashaka** grave *serious*
**mashariki** east
**masharubu** mustach
**mashimo ya makaa** coal mine
**mashindano** competition; contest
**mashine** machine; **mashine ya feksi** fax machine; **mashine ya fotokopi** photocopier; **mashine ya kukausha nywele** hairdryer; **mashine ya kutia hesabu** calculator; **mashine ya teipreita** typewriter
**mashiti masafi** clean sheets
**mashua** boat; **mashua ya matanga** sailboat
**masikini** poor
**masomo** study
**matamshi** pronunciation
**matangazo cha redio** radio broadcast
**matata** problem
**matatizo** trouble
**matengenezo** repair
**matibabu ya watoto** pediatrics
**matope** mud
**mauaji** assassination; **mauaji ya kabila** genocide
**maulizo** enquiry
**maumivu** pain; injury; **maumivu ya jino** toothache; **maumivu ya kichwa** headache; **maumivu ya kichwa kutokana na pombe** hangover; **maumivu ya koo** sore throat; **maumivu ya tumbo** stomachache
**mavuno** reaping
**mawakilisho** representation
**mawasiliano** communications; telecommunications
**mawingu** foggy
**mazao** harvest; yield; **mazao bidhaa** product
**maziko** funeral
**maziwa** milk
**mazowezi** exercise
**mazungumzo** conversation; subject; **mazungumzo ya amani** peace talks
**mbabuko** sunburn
**Mbaharani** Persian *person*
**mbali** far
**mbalimbali** different
**mbao** wood
**mbatata** potato
**mbaya** bad; terrible
**mbaya sana** worse
**mbegu** seed; germs
**mbele** front *noun*; forward(s)
**mbele ya** front: in front of
**mbichi** raw
**mbili** two; double
**mbingu** sky
**mbio mbio** fast; quickly
**mboga** vegetables; **mboga ya kachumbai** lettuce
**mbu** mosquito
**mbuka** remember
**mbuzi** goat
**mbwa** dog; **mbwa anayelinda kondoo** sheepdog; **mbwa mwitu** wolf
**mchana** afternoon; noon; daytime
**mchanga** sand
**mchapishaji** publisher
**mchele** rice *raw*
**mchezaji** actor
**mchezo** game; performance; play; **mchezo wa mpira** soccer match; **mchezo wa sinema** movie; **mchezo wa ski** skiing
**Mchina** Chinese *person*
**mchumi** economist

**mchunga kondoo** shepherd
**mchwa** termite
**Mdachi** Dutch *person*
**Mdenish** Dane
**mdogo** junior
**mdomo** lip; mouth
**mdudu** insect
**mechi ya mpira** match *football*
**Mei** May
**meli** mile; ship
**mende** cockroach
**meneja** manager
**meno** teeth
**menyu** menu
**meremeta** sparkle
**methali** proverb
**meza** table
**-meza** to swallow
**mfalme** king; sultan; monarch
**mfano** example
**mfanya biashara** businessman/woman
**mfanya magendo** smuggler
**mfanyaji filmu** film-maker
**mfanyakazi** worker; **mfanyakazi wa madini** miner; **mfanyakazi wa baa** bartender; **mfanyakazi wa benki** banker; **mfanyakazi wa mafuta** oil worker; **mfanyakazi wa ofisi** office worker; **mfanyakazi ya kulipwa** professional
**Mfaransa** Frenchman/Frenchwoman
**mfarishi** duvet; quilt
**mfereji** tap; faucet; drain; canal; **mfereji wa mvua** shower
**mfuko** pocket; bag; carrier bag; **mfuko wa kulalia** sleeping bag
**mfumo** system; **mfumo wa utawala** regime
**mfungwa** prisoner; **mfungwa wa vita** prisoner-of-war
**mganga wa viungo** physiotherapy
**mganga wa watoto** pediatrician
**mgeni** guest; visitor; stranger; foreigner; immigrant
**Mgiriki** Greek *person*
**mgomo** strike *from work*
**mgonjwa** patient *medical*; **mgonjwa wa kisukari** diabetic
**mgorogoro** dispute
**mguu** foot; leg
**mhadhara** lecture
**mhamishwaji** Displaced Person
**mhandishi** engineer
**mhanga wa vita** victim of war
**mhariri** editor
**mhasibu** accountant
**Mhindi** Indian *person*
**mhuduma** waiter; waitress
**mhuri** stamp *official*
**mia** hundred
**miaka kumi** decade
**miereka** wrestling
**miko** allergy
**milioni** million
**mimi** I; me; **mimi mwenyewe** myself
**-mimina** to pour
**miongoni mwa** among
**mishumaa** candles
**mita** meter; **mita ya umeme** light meter
**miti** trees
**mitindo** fashion
**mitishamba** herb
**miujiza** miracle
**miwani** glasses; lens; **miwani za juwa** sunglasses
**mizigo** cargo; freight
**mizinga mikubwa** artillery
**Mjapani** Japanese *person*
**Mjerumani** German *person*

**mji** town; city; **mji mkongwe** old city; **mji mkuu** capital
**mjini** main square; town square; town center
**mjomba** uncle
**mjukuu** grandchild
**mjusi** lizard
**mkaa** coal
**mkabala (wa)** opposite
**mkaguzi** surveyor
**mkahawa** restaurant
**mkalimani** interpreter; translator
**Mkanada** Canadian *person*
**mkao** position
**mkasi** scissors
**mkataba** agreement; contract
**mkate** bread; loaf
**Mkatoliki** Catholic *person*
**mke** wife
**mkebe wa mafuta** oilcan
**mkimbizi** refugee
**Mkiristo** Christian *person*
**mkoba wa mkononi** handbag
**mkono** arm
**mkopo** credit
**mkubwa** senior
**mkufu** chain
**mkulima** farmer
**mkunga** midwife
**mkurugenzi** manager
**mkutano** meeting; conference
**mkuu wa nchi** head of state
**mlango** door; entrance; **mlango wa kutokea** exit; **mlango wa dharura** emergency exit
**Mlebananiz** Lebanese *person*
**mlemavu** disabled
**mlevi** drunk person
**Mlibnan** Lebanese *person*
**mlima** hill; mountain
**mlinzi** guard; nightwatchman; **mlinzi wa mpaka** guard: border guard
**Mmarekani** American *person*
**mmoja baada ya mmoja** after: one after another
**mnara** tower; minaret; **mnara wa taa** lighthouse
**Mngereza** British; English *person*
**mnyama** animal
**mnyoo** worm
**mnyororo** chain
**mobitel** mobile phone; cell phone
**modemu ya kompyuta** modem
**moja** one
**moja kasorobo** three-quarters
**moja pekee** single
**moja kwa moja** direct; straight on
**moshi** smoke
**moto** fire
**motoni** hell
**motosaikal** motorbike
**moyo** heart
**mpaka** border; frontier; until
**mpaka rangi** painter
**Mpakistani** Pakistani *person*
**mpangilio wa chakula** diet *food*
**mpatanishi** negotiator
**mpenzi** dear; darling; loved (one)
**mpiga mbizi** diver
**mpiga muziki disko** disk jockey
**mpiga picha** photographer
**mpiganaji** fighter
**mpiganaji wa kuvizia** guerrilla
**mpira** ball; tyre/tire; **mpira wa maji** hose; **mpira wa miguu** football; soccer; **mpira wa ndani** inner tube; **mpira wa spea** spare tire
**mpishi** cook

**mpumbavu** fool
**mpya** new; fresh
**mrefu** tall
**mrengo wa kulia** right-wing
**mrengo wa kushoto** left-wing
**mripuko** explosion
**Mrusi** Russian *person*
**msaada** help; aid; charity; relief aid; **msaada wa binaadamu** humanitarian aid
**msafiri** traveler
**Msalaba Mwekundu** Red Cross
**msalani** toilet
**msamaha** apology
**msanifu wa majengo** architect
**msanii** artist; craftsman; inventor
**Mscotland** Scot
**msemaji** speaker
**mshairi** poet
**mshamba** peasant
**mshauri** consultant
**mshika fedha** cashier
**mshikaki** kebab
**mshipa** vein
**mshoni** dressmaker
**mshumaa** candle
**msichana** girl; Ms.
**msikiti** mosque
**msimamizi** administrator
**msimu** season
**msingi** base; basis; channel; foundation
**msitu** forest; **msitu nyika** thick forest
**Mspanish** Spaniard
**mstari** line; ruler
**msumari** nail; screw
**msumeno** saw
**mswaki** toothbrush
**mtaa** street
**mtaalamu** specialist; **mtaalamu wa jiolojia** geologist; **mtaalamu wa kilimo** agronomist; **mtaalamu wa nusu kaputi** anesthetist
**mtafaruku** crisis
**mtafuno wa nyoka** snakebite
**Mtaliana** Italian *person*
**mtalii** tourist
**mtama** millet
**mtawala** ruler *person*
**mtazamo** view
**mtego** trap; booby trap
**mteja wa madawa ya kulevya** drug addict
**mteka nyara** hijacker; kidnapper
**mtelezo** slope
**mtendaji** activist
**mteremko wa maji** waterfall
**mteremko wa ski** ski slope
**mtetemeko wa ardhi** earthquake
**mti** plant; tree
**mtihani** exam
**mtindi** yogurt
**mto** stream; river; lake; pillow
**mtoto** child; **mtoto mchanga** baby; infant; **mtoto wa bandia** doll
**mtu** person; man; **mtu fulani** someone/somebody; **mtu wa Ulaya** European *person*
**mtungaji wa nyimbo** composer
**Mturuki** Turk
**muavuli** umbrella
**muda** while
**muhimu** important
**mume** husband
**Mungu** God
**murika** flash
**musiki** music
**musiki wa zamani** classical music
**muuaji** killer
**muumbaji** inventor

**muundo** structure
**Muungano wa Nchi za Amerika** United States of America
**Muungano wa Ulaya** European Union
**muwakilishi** representative
**muwaliko** invitation
**muwasho** itch
**muwelekeo** directions
**Muwelsh** Welsh *person*
**muziki** music
**muziki wa kiasili** folk music
**mvinyo** wine
**mvivu** lazy
**mvua** rain; **Mvua inanyesha.** It is raining.
**mvunjiko** fracture
**-mwaga** to empty; to spill
**mwaka** year; **mwaka mfupi** leap year; **mwaka huu** this year; **mwaka jana** last year; **mwaka ujao** next year; **mwaka uliopita** a year ago
**Mwaka Mpya** New Year
**mwalimu** teacher; **mwalimu mkuu** professor
**mwana adamu** human being
**mwanachama** member
**mwana diplomasia** diplomat
**mwanafunzi** pupil; student
**mwana ginokolojia** gynecologist
**mwana historia** historian
**mwana isimu** linguist
**mwana riadha** athlete
**mwana sayansi** scientist
**mwana wa riadha** sportsman
**mwana wa siasa** politician
**mwanamke** woman; female
**mwanamume** man; male
**mwandiko** inscription
**mwandishi** author; writer; **mwandishi wa habari** journalist
**mwangalizi** observer
**mwangaza** light
**mwanzo** first
**Mwarabu** Arab
**Mwaustralia** Australian *person*
**mwenda wazimu** crazy
**mwendeshaji** operator; **mwendeshaji gari** driver; **mwendeshaji wa ndege** pilot
**mwendo** rate *speed*
**mwenye duka** shopkeeper
**mwenyeji** host
**mwenye kutokula nyama** vegetarian
**mwenzi** colleague; companion
**mwezi** month; moon; **mwezi mchanga** new moon; **mwezi mpevu** full moon
**mwili** body
**Mwiran** Iranian *person*
**Mwirish** Irish *person*
**mwisho** end; final; last
**Mwislamu** Muslim *person*
**mwitu** wood *forest*
**mwizi** thief
**mwoka mikate** baker's
**mwongozaji** leader
**mwuaji** murderer; assassin
**mwuguzi** nurse
**mwuzaji** salesperson
**Myahudi** Jew; Jewish *person*
**mzee** elder; old person
**mzima** well
**mzinga** cannon
**Mzungu** Briton; European
**mzuri** beautiful *person*

# N

**na** and; with
**nadharia** theory

**nafasi** space
**nambari** number; **nambari ya chumba** room number; **nambari ya paspoti** passport number
**nane** eight
**nani?** who?
**napenda...** I like...
**nataka...** I want to...; I like...
**nauli** fare; **Nauli kiasi gani?** What is the fare?
**nchi** country; nation; state; **nchi huru** independent state; **nchi iliyo vamiwa** occupation of a country
**ndani** interior
**ndani ya** in; into
**ndege** bird; plane; flight
**ndege ya international** international flight
**ndevu** beard
**ndimu** lime
**ndiyo** yes
**ndoa** marriage
**ndoana** hook
**ndogo** small; little; **ndogo sana** smaller
**ndoo** bucket
**ndoto** dream
**ndugu** brother
**nenda!** go!
**nene** fat
**nepi** nappy; diaper
**neva** nerve
**New Zealand** New Zealand
**ngamia** camel
**ngano** grain; wheat; legend
**ngapi** how much?; how many?
**-ng'ara** to shine
**ngazi** ladder; **ngazi ya umeme** escalator
**-ngojea** to wait
**ngoma** drum; **ngoma ya kiasili** folk dancing
**ng'ombe** cow; cattle; **ng'ombe dume** bull
**ngome** fort
**ngozi** skin; leather
**nguchiro** ferret
**ngumi** fight; boxing
**ngumu** hard *not soft*
**nguo** clothes; **nguo ya kukogea pwani** swimsuit; **nguo za ndani** underwear
**nguruwe** pig
**nguvu** power; strength; strong
**nimefahamu** I understand.
**nina** I am; **Nina kiu.** I'm thirsty.
**ninaweza...** I can...
**ninahitaji...** I need...
**ninajua...** I know...
**ninasema...** I speak...
**ninashukurani** I am grateful.
**ninataka...** I want...
**ninaumwa** I am ill.
**ninaweza?** may I?
**Ninayo...** I have....
**nini?** what?; **nini kile?** what's that?
**ninyi** you *plural*
**ninyi wenyewe** yourselves
**nipe** give me...
**nisaidieni!** help!
**nisamehe!** sorry!
**njaa** hungry
**nje** out; outside
**njia** road; way; route; track; **njia hii** this way; **njia ile** that way; **njia za mawasiliano** media; **njia imefungwa** roadblock; **njia nyembamba** footpath; **njia panda** crossing; crossroads; **njia ya chini kwa chini** metro; underpass; **njia ya kwenda tu** one-way street; **Njia ya kuweza kupita?** passable: Is the road passable?

**njoo!** come!
**njugu** nut
**nne** four
**Northern Ireland** Northern Ireland
**noti** bank note(s)
**Novemba** November
**-nuka** to stink
**numbari ya sehemu ya kupandia treni** platform number
**nunda** rebel
**-nunua** to buy
**nusu** half
**nusu-kaputi** anesthetic
**nyama** meat; **nyama ya ng'ombe** beef; **nyama ya nguruwe** pork
**nyanya** tomato
**-nyanyua** to lift; to raise
**nyasi kavu** hay
**nyekundu** red
**nyembamba** thin; lean; narrow
**nyengine** other; another
**nyepesi sio nzito** light *not heavy*
**nyeupe** white; clear
**nyeusi** black
**nyie** you *plural*; **nyie wenyewe** yourselves
**nyigu** wasp
**-nyima** to deprive
**nyimbo** song
**nyingi** many; most; much; lot; a lot; **nyingi sana** too many/much; so many/much
**nyoka** snake
**nyota** star
**nyuki** bee
**nyuma** back
**nyuma (ya)** behind
**nyumba** house; **nyumba ya sanaa** art gallery; **nyumba ya watawa** monastery; **nyumba za msajili** housing estate/project
**nyumbani** home; homeland
**nyumbu** mule
**nyundo** hammer
**nyuzi** string
**nywele** hair
**nzi** fly
**nzima** whole
**nzito** heavy
**nzuri** good; fine; nice; perfect; best; better

**-oda chakula** to order a meal
**ofisa** officer
**ofisi** office; **ofisi ya habari** information office; **ofisi ya tikti** ticket office; **ofisi ya usafiri** travel agency; **ofisi ya utalii** tourist office
**-oga** to bathe
**-ogolea** to swim
**-ogopa** to fear; to be afraid
**-oka** to bake
**Oktoba** October
**-ona** to see; **-ona aibu** to feel ashamed
**-onana** to meet
**-ondoa** to take off *something*
**-ondoka** to move; to leave
**-ongoza** to lead; to guide
**-onja** to taste
**-onyesha** to show; to exhibit
**opera** opera
**operesheni** operation; surgery
**opereta wa simu** telephone operator
**opereta wa international** international operator
**orodha** list
**-ota** to grow

**-ota jua** to sunbathe
**-ovateik** to overtake

# P

**paa** deer; roof
**pahala** place; location; **pahala pengine** somewhere; **pahala pa kukaa** accommodation; **pahala pa kuzaliwa** place of birth
**paja** lap
**paka** cat
**Pakistani** Pakistan
**pamba** cotton; cotton wool
**pamoja** together; **pamoja na** included; **...pamoja na...** both... and...
**pampu** pump
**pana** wide; thick
**pancha** puncture; flat tire
**-panda** to sow; **-panda farasi** to ride a horse; **-panda mbegu** to grow crops
**panga** machete
**-panga** to arrange
**pango** cave
**-panua** to extend
**panya** mouse; rat
**papasi** guide
**parashut** parachute
**Pasaka** Easter
**-pasha moto** to heat
**pasi** iron *for clothes*
**paspoti** passport
**-pasuka** to split; to burst
**-pata** to get
**pati** party
**pauni** pound *sterling*
**pauro** shovel; spade
**pea** pear
**pekee** alone; only; unique
**-peleka** to send
**pembe** angle
**pembeya** swing
**-penda** to like; to love
**-penda zaidi** to prefer
**pendo** love
**penesilin** penicillin
**penseli** pencil
**pepo** heaven; paradise
**peremende** candy
**pesa** money; coins
**pete** ring
**petroli** petrol; gas; fuel
**pia** also
**piano** piano
**picha** picture; image; photo; portrait
**pichi** peach
**-piga** to hit; to beat; **-piga chombo cha muziki** to play a musical instrument; **-piga goti** to kneel; **-piga kelele** to shout; **-piga kura** to vote; **-piga risasi** to shoot; **-piga simu** to phone/dial/ring
**-pika** to cook
**pik-ap** truck
**pikipiki** motorbike
**pilipili** pepper
**-pima** to measure
**-pinda** to turn; to bend; **pinda kulia!** turn right!; **pinda kushoto!** turn left!
**-pinga** to protest
**pingo** protest
**pini** pin; safety pin
**pipa** barrel
**pipi** candy
**-pita** to pass
**piza** pizza
**plagi** plug
**plamu** plum
**plasta** plaster; Band-Aid
**plastik** plastic
**pochi** wallet

**podari** powder; **podari za usoni** make-up
**-pokea** to receive
**polepole** quietly
**polisi** police
**polo** polo
**pombe** alcohol
**-pona** to heal
**-pooza** to paralyze
**popote** anywhere
**poromoko** avalanche
**posta** post office
**postkadi** postcard
**-poteza** to lose
**presha** pressure; **presha ya damu iko chini** low blood pressure; **presha ya damu iko juu** high blood pressure
**printa ya kompyuta** printer
**programu cha kompyuta** computer program
**projekta** projector
**pua** nose
**puding** dessert
**-puliza** to blow
**pumbavu** silly
**pumu** asthma
**pumzi** breath
**-pumzika** to rest
**punda** donkey
**pwani** shore

# R

**raba** rubber
**rada** radar
**radi** thunder; thunderstorm
**rafiki** friend
**ragbi** rugby
**raha** pleasure
**rahisi** cheap; easy; **rahisi sana** cheaper
**raia** citizen; civilian
**raisi** president; premier; **raisi mkuu** prime minister
**Ramadhani** Ramadan
**ramani** map; **ramani ya mji** city map; **ramani ya njia** road map; **ramani ya Zanzibar** map of Zanzibar
**rangi** color; paint; **rangi ya majano** orange; **rangi ya mdomo** lipstick; **rangi za uso** make-up
**rasilmali** capital *financial*
**ratiba** timetable; **ratiba ya safari** timetable for travel
**ratili** pound *weight*
**raundabaut** roundabout
**redieta** radiator
**redio** radio
**referee** referee
**refu** long
**-rejea** to return; to repeat
**-rejesha** to replace
**rekodi** record
**-rekodi** to record
**reservation** reservation *ticket/hotel*
**resi za farasi** horse racing
**riadha** athletics; sports
**rikwama** cart
**ripoti** report
**-ripuka** to explode
**risasi** bullet
**risiti** receipt
**robo** quarter: one-quarter
**roho** soul
**rojo** source
**-rudi** to return; to withdraw; **-rudi nyuma** to go backwards; to reverse
**-ruhusu** to allow
**-ruka** to fly; to leap
**-rusha** to throw; to transmit
**rutuba** fertilizer

# S

**saa** clock; watch; hour; time; **Saa ngapi?** What time is it?; **Saa sita.** It is six o'clock.
**saba** seven
**sababu** reason; excuse; **sababu ya kusafiri** reason for travel
**sabini** seventy
**sabuni** soap; detergent
**safari** travel; **safari njema!** bon voyage!
**safbod** surfboard
**safi** clean
**-safiri** to travel
**-safirisha** to export
**-safisha** to clean
**safu** row; line
**-saga** to grind
**sahaba** saint
**sahani** plate
**sahani ya santuri** LP
**-sahau** to forget
**sahihi** correct; exact; signature
**-sahihisha** to correct
**-saidia** to help
**saisi** groom; syce
**saladi** salad
**salama** safe
**-sali** to pray
**-salia** to remain
**samahani!** excuse me!; sorry!
**samaki** fish
**-samehe** to apologize
**sana** too; very; much
**sanaa** art
**sanamu** statue
**sanduku** chest; box
**sandweji** sandwich
**-sanii** to create
**sare** uniform
**sarufi** grammar
**sasa** now; present **sasa hivi** right now
**satalait** satellite
**sauti** sound; voice
**sawa** level; correct; right
**sayansi** science
**Scotland** Scotland
**sehemu** area; part; place; region; **sehemu ya pwani** coast; **sehemu inotowa mafuta** oilfield; **sehemu inozalisha mafuta** oil production; **sehemu ya kusafisha mafuta** oil refinery; **sehemu ya konseti** concert hall; **sehemu ya kulia kwenye gari moshi** dining car; **sehemu ya kulisha** feeding station; **sehemu ya kupaki gari** car park; **sehemu ya kupandia treni** platform; **sehemu ya kuweka kambi** campsite; **sehemu ya maji mengi** deepwater platform; **sehemu ya mapokezi** reception desk; **sehemu ya mshika fedha** cashier's booth; **sehemu ya wakimbizi** refugee camp; **sehemu nyeti** genitals
**sekundi** second *noun*
**sela** cellar
**-sema** to say; to speak; to tell
**senti** coins; change
**Septemba** September
**seremala** carpenter
**serikali** government
**shaba** copper
**shahada** document
**shahidi** witness; martyr
**shairi** poem
**shaka** doubt
**shakhsia** etiquette
**shamba** countryside; farm; field; **shamba la matunda** orchard

**-shambulia** to attack
**shambulio** attack; raid
**shampeni** champagne
**-shangaza** to be surprising
**shangwe** gala
**sharia** law
**shariki** east(ern)
**shati** shirt
**shawa** shower
**shayiri** barley
**shetani** devil
**-shika** to hold; to take
**shikio** ear
**shimo** hole
**-shinda** to defeat; to win
**shindano** needle; dispute; struggle; **shindano ya kudunga** syringe
**shingo** neck
**shirika la ndege** airline
**-shiriki** to participate
**shirikisho** federation
**shoka** ax
**shoki** shock; **shoki ya umeme** electric shock
**-shona** to sew
**shughuli** business; work; busy
**shujaa** brave; hero
**-shukuru** to thank
**shule** school; **shule kuu** college
**si** not; **si popote** nowhere
**siasa** politics
**Sifahamu.** I don't understand.
**sifu** praise
**sifuri** nought
**sigaa** cigar
**sigireti** cigarette(s)
**siha** health
**Sijui.** I don't know.
**siki** vinegar
**-sikia** to hear
**-sikiliza** to listen
**siku** day; **siku ya kuzaliwa** birthday
**silaha** weapon
**-simama** to stand; to stop
**simu** phone; **simu ya kibanda** pay phone; public phone; **simu ya mkono** mobile phone; cell phone; **simu ya satalait** satellite phone
**sindano** needle
**sinema** cinema; film/movie
**sintaksi** syntax
**sinyenge** barbed wire
**sio** no; not; **sio nyingi** not much; **sio sawa** that is wrong
**sipendi...** I don't like...
**siri** secret
**sisi** we; **sisi wenyewe** ourselves
**sisimizi** ant
**sita** six
**sitaki...** I don't want...
**sitini** sixty
**sitoberi** strawberry
**skuli** school
**skwaya** square
**sodo** tampon; sanitary towels
**soko** market
**-sokota** to wind
**soksi** sock
**-soma** to learn; to read; to study
**-somesha** to teach
**somo** lesson
**soseji** sausage
**spana** spanner; wrench
**spanji** sponge
**spidi** speed
**spika mgeni** guest speaker
**springi** spring
**stadium** stadium
**-starehe** to relax
**-starehesha** to be comfortable
**steji** stage
**steki** steak
**stempu** stamp
**stetoskopi** stethoscope

**stichi** stitches
**suali** question
**-subiri** to wait for
**sufi** cotton; wool
**sufuri** zero
**sukari** sugar
**-sukuma** to push
**sumu** poison
**sungura** rabbit
**supamaket** supermarket
**supu** soup
**sura** chapter
**suruwali** trousers
**suti** suit
**sweta** sweater
**swichi** switch

# T

**taa** lamp; light(ing)
**taasisi** institute
**tabu** difficult; hard
**tadhari** careful
**tafadhali!** please!
**tafsiri** translation
**-tafsiri** to translate
**-tafuna** to bite; to chew
**-tafuta** to find; to look for; to search; to seek
**tai** eagle; necktie
**taifa** nation
**taire** tire; tyre
**tait** pantyhose; tights
**tajiri** rich
**taka** garbage; rubbish; trash
**-taka** to want
**takriban** almost; nearly; more or less
**talaka** divorce
**tamasha** festival; **tamasha la filmu** film festival; **tamasha la muziki** music festival
**tambi** pasta
**-tambua** to recognize; to realize
**-tamka** to pronounce
**tamu** sweet
**tangazo** advert
**tangi** tank; **tangi la petroli** tank
**tango** cucumber
**tangua** undo
**tano** five
**tanuri la mikate** bakery
**-tapika** to vomit
**-taraji** to expect
**taratibu** slow
**tarehe** date; **tarehe ya kufika** date of arrival; **tarehe ya kuondoka** date of departure; **tarehe ya kuzaliwa** date of birth
**tasa** barren
**tasbihi** rosary
**tatu** three
**-tatua** to solve
**taula** towel
**-tawanya** to spread
**-tawanyika** to scatter
**tayari** ready; already
**-tayarisha** to prepare
**-tazama** to look; to watch
**-teka nyara** to hijack; to take hostage; to kidnap
**-teketeza** to ravage
**teksi** taxi
**telegram** telegram
**teleks** telex
**televisheni** television; **televisheni ndogo** portable TV
**-teleza** to slip
**-teleza mawimbi** to surf
**-tema mate** to spit
**-tembezi marefu** to hike
**tena** again; also
**-tengeneza** to fix; to repair
**tenis** tennis
**tepu** tape
**tepu-rikoda** tape recorder
**thamani** worth

**thamomita** thermometer
**thelathini** thirty
**theluji** snow
**theluthi** one-third
**themanini** eighty
**thiata** theater
**-thibitisha** to prove; to establish
**thomu** garlic
**thrombosis** thrombosis
**-tia adabu** to punish
**-tia kura** to vote
**-tia rangi** to paint
**-tia sahihi** to sign
**-tibu** to cure
**-tikisa** to shake
**tikiti** melon; watermelon
**tikti** ticket; **tikti ya kurejea** return ticket; **tikti ya kwenda na kurudi** return ticket; **tikti ya kwenda (tu)** one-way ticket
**timu** team
**tisa** nine
**-tisha** to frighten
**tishu** tissues
**tisini** ninety
**-tizama** to check
**-toa** to give; to deliver; to supply
**-toa fotokopi** to photocopy
**tochi** flashlight
**tofali** brick
**-toka damu** to bleed
**tokea** since
**-tokea** to happen; to appear
**-tosha** to be enough
**tosti** toast
**toto la meza** drawer
**-towa** to give; to hand over
**tozwa** fine *of money*
**trafik lait** traffic lights
**transfoma** transformer
**transmita** transmitter
**trekta** tractor
**treni** train; railway; locomotive
**tu** only *adverb*
**tubu** tube
**tufaa** apple
**-tuka nje** to go out
**-tukana** to swear *curse*
**tukio** adventure
**tumbaku** tobacco
**tumbo** stomach
**tumbo la kuhara** diarrhea
**-tumia** to use; to spend
**tunaweza...?** can we...?; **Tunaweza kuweka kambi?** Can we camp here?
**-tundika** to hang
**tungule** tomato
**-tunza** to care
**tupu** empty
**Turuki** Turkey
**-tuwa kwa ndege** to land *airplane*
**twende!** let's go!

# U

**ua** flower; fence; yard; murder
**-ua** to kill; to execute
**uamuzi** decision
**uanzishaji** foundation *organization*
**ubalozi** embassy
**ubani** chewing gum
**Ubaniani** Hinduism
**ubao** plank
**ubinaadamu** humanitarian
**uchaguzi** election
**uchanganuzi** analysis
**uchekeshaji** humorous
**ucheshi** humor
**uchumi** economy; economics
**uchunguzi** research; investigation
**udikteta** dictatorship
**ufukuzajwi wa nchi** deportation
**ufundi** skill

**ufunguo** key; **ufunguo wa chupa** bottle-opener; **ufunguo wa chupa ya mvino** cork-screw; **ufunguo wa kopo** can opener
**ugeni** foreign
**Ugirisi** Greece
**ugomvi** fight
**ugomvi mkubwa** feud
**uhali gani?** how are you?
**uhamiaji** immigration
**uhuru** freedom; independence
**uhusiano** relationship; ties; **uhusiano wa diplomasia/madola** diplomatic ties
**Uingereza** Britain
**ujambazi** crime
**ujana** youth
**ujia mwembamba** path
**ujoto** heatwave
**ujotojoto** warm
**ujuzi** knowledge
**ukanda** belt
**ukanda wa feni ya gari** fan belt
**ukilima** farming
**ukimwi** AIDS
**ukingo wa mto** river bank
**Ukiristo** Christianity
**ukoko** dam
**ukosefu** lack
**ukosefu wa kazi** unemployment
**ukumbi** forum
**ukumbusho** souvenir
**ukuta** wall
**ukweli** fact; truth; reality
**Ulaya** Europe
**ulimi** tongue
**ulimwenguni** nature
**-uliza** to ask
**uma** fork
**umande** fog; mist
**umbali gani?** how far?
**umbo** form; shape
**umefahamu?** do you understand?
**umekosea!** you're wrong!
**umeme** electricity
**-umia** to be injured
**-umiza** to injure
**umoja** union
**Umoja wa Mataifa** United Nations
**umri** age
**umuhimu** importance
**-umwa** to be ill/sick
**una** you have; you are
**Unaitwa je?** What are you called?
**Unasema Kingereza?** Do you speak English?
**Unataka?** What do you want?
**Unaweza kunisaidia?** Can you help me?
**unga** flour
**-unga mkono** to back
**unganisha** connection
**Uingereza** England
**ungonjwa wa baridi ya barafu** frostbite
**-unguza** to burn
**upande** section
**upelelezaji** exploration
**upepeo** wind; fan
**upigaji wa picha** photography
**upinde wa mvua** rainbow
**upinzani** opposition
**upungufu** shortage
**uraia** nationality; citizenship
**urasimu** bureaucracy
**urembo wa mwili** toiletries
**Urusi** Russia
**usafi** hygiene
**usafiri** transport
**usafirishaji** export
**usalama** safety; security
**usanifu wa majengo** architecture

**usawa** level
**ushahidi** evidence; proof
**ushindi** victory
**ushirikiano** cooperation
**ushuru** tax
**usifanye...!** do not...!
**usiku** night; **usiku wa manane** midnight
**usisimame!** don't stop!
**uso** face
**ustaarabu** culture
**ustadi** technique
**usukani** steering wheel
**utafiti** research
**utalii** tourism
**utambuzi** diagnosis *medical*
**utawala** reign
**ute wa mgongo** spine
**uteguaji wa bomu** bomb disposal
**utenzi** composition
**uwanda** plain; **uwanja wa mpira** pitch *football;* **uwanja wa ndege** airport; airfield
**uwatu** mustard
**uwezo** ability
**uwizi** theft
**uwongo** false; lie
**Uyahudi** Judaism
**-uza** to sell
**uzi** thread
**uzima** healthy
**uzito** weight; **uzito wa mabegi** excess baggage
**uzuri** beauty

# V

**-vaa** to wear; **-vaa nguo** to get dressed
**vanishi** varnish
**viatu** shoes; **viatu vya mabuti** boots
**vibaya** badly
**vidonda** ulcer
**vidudu** insects
**vifaa** supplies; tools; **vifaa vya ofisini** stationery
**vimba** swell
**vipi?** how?
**vipodozi** make-up
**virusi** virus
**vita** war; **vita vya raia** civil war
**vitu** things
**vitu vya udongo** ceramics
**vitu vyote** everything
**viunga** suburb
**viungo** limbs
**viwanda** industry
**viza** visa
**vizuri** well *adverb*
**-vuja** to leak
**-vuka** to cross
**vuli** spring; fall
**-vumbuwa** to discover
**-vunja** to break; to crash
**-vunjika** to fracture
**vurugu** violence
**-vuta** to pull; to drag; to pump
**-vuta sigara** to smoke
**vyakula** meals
**vyombo vya dhahabu** *gold* jewelry
**vyombo vya fedha** *silver* jewelry
**vyoo** toilets
**vyungu** pottery

# W

**-wa-** them
**Waafrika popote walipo duniani** African diaspora
**waandamaji** demonstrators *political*

**waandishi wa habari** the press
**wachache** minority
**wachilia** release
**wafanyakazi** staff
**wajibu** obligation
**wakati mrefu** for a long time
**wakati** time; period; **wakati ujao** future; **wakati wa** during
**wakili** lawyer
**-wakilisha** to represent
**wakimbizi** refugees
**wala** neither; or
**wali** rice *cooked*
**-wana** to contain
**wanja** mascara
**wao** they; their; theirs
**wao wenyewe** themselves
**wapi?** where?
**waridi** rose; pink
**-washa** to light; to switch on; **-washa moto** to light a fire
**wasifu** biography
**wastani** average *adjective*
**watoto** children
**watu** people; folk; nation
**watu wote** everybody; everyone
**wavu** fishing net
**waya** wire
**wazee** parents
**wazi** clear; open
**wazimu** insane
**waziri** minister
**Wazungu** British; Europeans
**-weka** to put; to keep; to maintain
**-weka chini** to lay
**-weka gari** to park
**-weka pesa benki** to save
**wenzo** lever
**wewe** you *singular*
**wewe mwenyewe** yourself *singular*
**-weza** to be able
**wiki** week; **wiki hii** this week; **wiki ijayo** next week; **wiki iliyopita** last week
**wiki-end** weekend
**wiki mbili** fortnight
**wimbi** wave
**winchi** derrick
**-winda** to hunt
**-winda iso halali** to poach *animals/game*
**wingi** majority
**wingu** cloud
**wino** ink
**wiski** whiskey
**wiva** ripe
**wizara** ministry
**Wizara ya Elimu** Ministry of Education
**Wizara ya Jeshi** Ministry of Defense
**Wizara ya Kilimo** Ministry of Agriculture
**Wizara ya Mambo ya Ndani** Ministry of Home Affairs
**Wizara ya Mambo ya Nje** Ministry of Foreign Affairs
**Wizara ya Sheria** Ministry of Justice
**Wizara ya Siha** Ministry of Health
**Wizara ya Usafiri** Ministry of Transport
**wizi** robbery

# X

**x-ray** X-ray(s)

# Y

**ya** of
**Yahudi** Israeli *person*
**yai** egg

**yake** his; hers
**yako** your; yours *singular*
**yamkini** probable
**yangu** my
**yatima** orphan
**yawezekana** possible
**yenu** your; yours *plural*
**yenye** possessing; **yenye kupendeza** interesting; **yenye kutosheleza** satisfactory; **yenye pilipili** spicy; **yenye rutuba** fertile; **yenye sumaku** magnetic; **yenye ufundi** skilled
**yetu** our
**yeye** he; she
**yeye mwenyewe** himself; herself
**yeyusha** dissolve
**yote** all; every; entire; both; **yote kwa pamoja** all together
**yoyote** anyone
**yupi?** who?
**yupo** he/she is here

# Z

**-zaa** to give birth (to)
**zabibu** grape
**zaidi** more; **zaidi hasa** especially; **zaidi ya** in addition to; **zaidi ya hayo** besides
**-zama** to sink
**zambarau** berry; purple
**zawadi** gift; present; prize
**ziada** extra; excess
**ziba choo** indigestion
**-zika** to bury
**zile** those
**-zima** to switch off
**ziro** zero
**ziwa** breast
**zu** zoo
**zulia** carpet; rug
**-zulia** to accuse
**-zungumza** to talk
**-zungusha** to spin
**-zuru** to visit
**-zuwia** to control

# ENGLISH-SWAHILI
# KINGEREZA-KISWAHILI

## A

**ability** uwezo
**able: to be able** kuweza
**about** kiasi; **about 50 miles** kiasi meli hamsini; **about town** hapa hapa mjini; **I'll see about it.** Nitatizama.
**academy** chuo
**accelerator** kichapuzi
**accent** lafdhi
**access: Do you have access for the disabled?** Ziko huduma za walemavu?
**accident** ajali; **There's been an accident.** Kumetokea ajali.
**accommodation** pahali pa kukaa
**according to** kwa mujibu wa
**accountant** mhasibu
**accuse** kuzulia
**activist** mtendaji
**actor** mchezaji
**actual** halisi
**adapter** *electric* adapta
**add** kuengeza
**addition: in addition to** zaidi; zaidi ya
**address** anuwani
**administrator** msimamizi
**adventure** tukio
**advert** tangazo
**afraid: to be afraid** kuogopa
**after** baada ya; **after supper** baada ya chakula; **one after another** mmoja baada ya mmoja
**afternoon** mchana; **this afternoon** leo mchana; **good afternoon!** habari za mchana!
**afterwards** baadaye
**again** tena
**age** umri
**ago: a year ago** mwaka jana; **long ago** hapo kale
**agreement** mkataba; **to sign an agreement** kukata mkataba
**agriculture** kilimo
**agronomist** mtaalamu wa kilimo
**aid** msaada; **first aid** fasti edi
**AIDS** ukimwi
**air** hewa
**airfield** uwanja wa ndege
**air force** jeshi la anga
**air mail** barua inokwenda kwa ndege
**air conditioner; air conditioning** airconditioner
**airline** shirika la ndege
**airplane** ndege
**airport** uwanja wa ndege
**airport tax** malipo ya uwanja wa ndege
**alcohol** pombe
**alcoholic** mlevi wa pombe
**alive: to be alive** kuwa hai
**all** yote; **all together** yote kwa pamoja

**allergic: I'm allergic to antibiotics.** Antibiotik inanidhuru.
**allergy** miko
**allow** kuruhusu
**almost** kiasi; takriban
**alone** pekee; **He can do it alone.** Anaweza kufanya mwenyewe.
**alphabet** herufi
**already** tayari
**also** tena; pia
**alter** kubadilsha
**although** ingawa; ingawaje
**altitude sickness** maradhi ya nyanda za juu
**always** daima
**a.m.** *see note on page 187*
**ambassador** balozi
**ambulance** gari la wagonjwa
**America** Marekani
**American** Mmarekani
**among** miongoni mwa
**amount** kiasi
**amputation** kukata kiungo
**analysis** uchanganuzi
**ancestors** mababu wa mababu
**ancient** kale
**and** na; **both... and...** ...pamoja na...
**anesthetic** nusu kaputi
**anesthetist** mtaalamu wa nusu kaputi
**angle** pembe ; upande
**angry** hamaki
**animal** mnyama
**ankle** kifundo (cha mguu)
**annoyed: to be annoyed** kukasirishwa
**another** nyengine; **another bottle** chupa nyengine
**answer** *noun* jawabu; *verb* kujibu
**ant** sisimizi
**antibiotic** kivunjasumu
**anti-freeze** kivunjabarafu
**antiseptic** antiseptiki
**anyone** yoyote
**anywhere** popote
**apartment** fleti
**apartment block** jumba la mafleti
**apologize** kusamehe; **I apologize.** Naomba msamaha.
**apology** msamaha
**appear** kutokea
**apple** tufaa
**appliances** kifaa
**approximately** kiasi
**April** Aprili
**Arab** Mwarabu
**Arabic** *language* Kiarabu
**archeology** akiolojia
**architect** msanifu wa majengo
**architecture** usanifu wa majengo
**area** sehemu
**arm** mkono
**armored car** kifaru
**army** jeshi
**arrange** kupanga
**arrest** kukamata
**arrivals** kufikia
**arrive** kufika
**art** sanaa
**art gallery** nyumba ya sanaa
**artery** ateri
**article** makala
**artificial** bandia
**artificial limb** mguu/mkono wa bandia
**artillery** mizinga mikubwa
**artist** msanii
**ashamed: to feel ashamed** kuona aibu
**ashtray** kisahani cha jivu la sigara
**ask** kuuliza
**aspirin** aspirini

**assassin** mwuwaji
**assassination** mauwaji
**assembly** kusanyiko
**asthma** pumu
**athlete** mwana riadha
**athletics** riadha
**atlas** kitabu cha ramani
**attack** *noun* shambulio; *verb* -shambulia
**August** Agosti
**Australia** Australia
**Australian** *person* Mwaustralia; *thing* ya Australia
**author** mwandishi
**auto spares shop** duka la spea za gari
**autonomous** huru
**autonomy** kujitawala
**avalanche** poromoko
**average** *adjective* wastani
**awake: to be awake** kuwamka
**ax** shoka

# B

**baby** mtoto mchanga
**back** *noun* nyuma; *verb* kuunga mkono
**backache** maradhi ya mgongo
**backpack** begi la mgongoni
**backwards: to go backwards** kurudi nyuma
**bacteria** bakteria
**bad** mbaya
**badly** vibaya
**bag** mfuko; begi
**baggage** mabegi; **excess baggage** uzito wa mabegi
**baggage counter** kaunta ya mabegi
**bake** kuoka
**baker's** mwoka mikate
**bakery** tanuri la mikate
**balcony** behewa
**ball** mpira
**ballpoint** kalamu
**Band-Aid** *plaster* plasta
**bandit** jambazi
**bank** benki; **river bank** bwawani
**banker** mfanyakazi wa benki
**bank notes** noti
**banquet** karamu kubwa
**bar** baa
**barbed wire** sinyenge
**barber's** kinyozi
**bark** *verb* kubweka
**barley** shayiri
**barn** kihenge
**barracks** kambi ya majeshi
**barrel** pipa
**barren** tasa
**bartender** mfanyakazi wa baa
**base** msingi; kituo
**basin** beseni
**basis** msingi
**basket** kikapu
**basketball** basketboli
**bathe** kuoga
**bathroom** choo
**battery** betri
**battle** mapigano
**bay** ghuba
**be** kuwa
**beach** bichi
**beans** maharagwe
**beard** ndevu
**beat** *verb* kupiga
**beautiful** *person* mzuri; *thing* kizuri
**beauty** uzuri
**beauty salon** duka la uremba
**because (of)** kwa sababu (ya)
**become** kuwa
**bed** kitanda; **to go to bed** kwenda kulala

**bedroom** chumba cha kulala
**bee** nyuki
**beef** nyama ya ng'ombe
**beer** bia
**before** kabla (ya)
**begin** kwanza
**beginning** kwanza
**behind** nyuma (ya)
**believe** kuamini
**bell** kengele
**below** chini (ya)
**belt** ukanda
**bend** *verb* kupinda
**berry** zambarau
**besides** *preposition* karibu ya; *adverb* zaidi ya hayo
**best** nzuri
**betray** geukia
**better** nzuri; **I feel better.** Najisikia vizuri.
**between** kati (ya)
**Bible** Biblia
**bicycle** baskeli
**big** kubwa
**biggest** kubwa kabisa
**bill** bili
**binoculars** darubini
**biography** wasifu
**bird** ndege
**birth: to give birth to** kuzaa
**birth certificate** cheti cha kuzaliwa
**birth control** funga uzazi
**birthday** siku ya kuzaliwa
**bishop** kasisi
**bit** kidogo; **a little bit** kidogo tu
**bite** *verb* kutafuna
**bitter** chungu
**black** nyeusi
**black market** magendo
**blanket** blangeti
**bleed** kutoka damu
**blind** kipofu
**blizzard** dhoruba
**blocked: The toilet is blocked.** Choo kimeziba.
**blood** damu
**blood group** kundi la damu
**blood pressure** blood presha
**blood transfusion** kutia damu
**blow** *verb* kupuliza
**blow up** *explode* kuripuka
**blue** buluu
**boarding pass** boding-pass
**boat** mashuwa
**body** mwili
**boil** *noun* jipu; *verb* kuchemsha
**bomb** bomu
**bomb disposal** uteguaji wa bomu
**bombardment** kushambulia kwa mabomu
**bon voyage!** safari njema!
**bone** fupa
**bonnet** *of car* boneti
**booby trap** mtego
**book** kitabu; buku
**bookshop** duka la vitabu
**boot** *of car* buti; *and see* **boots**
**booth: cashier's booth** chumba cha mshika fedha
**boots** viatu vya mabuti
**border** mpaka
**border crossing** kivukoni
**border guard** askari wa mpaka
**born: Where were you born?** Wapi umezaliwa?; **I was born in...** Nimezaliwa...
**borrow** kuazima
**boss** bosi
**both** yote
**both... and...** ...pamoja na...
**bottle** chupa
**bottle of beer** chupa ya bia
**bottle of water** chupa ya maji
**bottle of wine** chupa ya mvinyo
**bottle-opener** ufunguo wa chupa

**bottom** chini
**box** boksi
**boxing** ngumi
**boy** mtoto; kijana
**boyfriend** *see note on page 103*
**bracelet** bangili
**brake** breki
**brandy** brandy
**brave** shujaa
**bread** mkate
**break** *for refreshments* mapumziko; *verb* kuvunja
**break down: Our car has broken down.** Gari imeharibika.
**breakfast** chai ya asubuhi
**breast** ziwa
**breath** pumzi
**brick** tofali
**bridge** daraja
**bring** kulete
**Britain** Uingereza
**British** *person* Mngereza; *thing* ya Kingereza
**brooch** brochi
**brother** ndugu
**brown** kahawia
**bruise** *verb* kuchunika
**brush** brashi
**bucket** ndoo
**budget** bageti
**build** kujenga
**building** jengo
**bull** ng'ombedume
**bullet** risasi
**bumper** bampa
**bureaucracy** urasimu
**burn** kuunguza
**burst** kupasuka
**bury** kuzika
**bus** basi
**bus station** kituo cha basi
**bus stop** kituo cha basi
**business** *work* shughuli; *enterprise* biashara
**business class** klasi ya business ya ndege
**businessman/woman** mfanya biashara
**busy** shughuli; **The line is busy.** Simu iko bizi.
**but** lakini
**butane canister** chupa la gesi
**butcher's** duka la nyama
**butterfly** kipepeo
**buy** kununua
**by** karibu na; **by bus** kwa basi; **by post** kwa posta

# C

**cabbage** kabeji
**cabinet** *cupboard* kabati; *political* bunge
**cable** kebo
**calculator** mashine ya kutia hesabu
**call: Call the police.** Ita polisi!
**called: What are you called?** Unaitwa je?
**camel** ngamia
**camera** kamera
**camp** kambi; **Can we camp here?** Tunaweza kuweka kambi?
**camping** kambi
**campsite** sehemu ya kuweka kambi
**campus** kampasi
**can** *noun* kopo; **I can...** Ninaweza...
**can opener** ufunguo wa kopo
**Canada** Kanada
**Canadian** Mkanada
**canal** mfereji

**cancel** kughairisha; **The plane is cancelled.** Ndege imeghairishwa.
**cancer** kansa; dondandugu
**candle** mshumaa
**candles** mishumaa
**candlestick** cha kuwekea mshumaa
**candy** pipi; peremende
**canister** kombora; kopo
**cannon** mzinga
**capital** *financial* rasilmali; *city* mji mkuu
**car** gari
**car papers** kibali cha gari
**car park** sehemu ya kupaki gari
**car registration** kibali cha gari
**car spares store** duka la spea za gari
**caravan** karavani
**care** tunza
**careful** tadhari
**cargo** mizigo
**carpenter** seremala
**carpet** zulia
**carrier bag** mfuko
**carry** chukuwa
**cart** rikwama
**carton** bomba
**cashier** mshika fedha
**cashier's booth** sehemu ya mshika fedha
**casino** kasino
**cassette** kaseti
**cast: plaster cast** *medical* piopi
**castle** kasri
**cat** paka
**catch** kamata
**caterpillar** kiwavi
**cathedral** kanisa kuu
**Catholic** Mkatoliki
**cattle** ng'ombe
**cause** chanzo
**cave** pango
**CD** cd [= sidi]
**CD player** cd [= sidi] player
**ceasefire** kusimamisha mapigano
**cellar** sela
**cell phone** simu ya mkono; mobitel
**cemetery** makaburini
**center** kati
**century** karne
**ceramics** vitu vya udongo
**certain** hakika
**certainly** kwa uhakika
**chain** mnyororo; mkufu
**chair** kiti
**champagne** shampeni
**change** kubadilisha; **I want to change some dollars.** Ninataka kubadilisha dollar.
**channel** msingi; **TV channel** chanel ya televisheni
**chapter** sura
**charge: What is the charge?** Bei gani?
**charity** msaada; *organization* chama cha misaada
**chase** kufukuza
**cheap** rahisi
**cheaper** rahisi sana
**check** *bank* hundi; **May I have the check?** Nipe bili.; *verb* kutizama; **Check the oil please.** Tizama mafuta.
**check-in** kuingia
**check-in counter** kaunta ya kuchekin
**cheers!** hongera!
**cheese** chizi
**chemical** kemikal
**chemistry** kemistri
**chess** chess

**chest** *box* sanduku; *body* kifuwa
**chew** kutafuna
**chewing gum** ubani
**chicken** kuku
**chief** chifu
**child** mtoto
**children** watoto
**chin** kidevu
**China** China
**Chinese** *person* Mchina; *thing* ya Kichina
**chocolate** chakleti
**choir** kwaya
**choke: He is choking!** Chakula kimemkwama!
**cholera** kolera
**choose** kuchaguwa
**chop** kukata
**Christian** *person* Mkiristo; *thing* ya Ukiristo
**Christianity** Ukiristo
**Christmas** Krismasi
**church** kanisa
**cigar** sigaa
**cigarette(s)** sigireti
**cigarette papers** chopri
**cinema** sinema
**circle** duwara
**citizen** raia
**citizenship** uraia
**citrus** lemau
**city** mji
**city center** kati ya mji
**city hall** manispaa
**city map** ramani ya mji
**civil rights** haki za raia
**civil war** vita vya raia
**civilian** raia
**class** klasi
**classical music** musiki wa zamani
**clean** *verb* kusafisha; *adjective* safi; **clean sheets** mashiti masafi
**clear** *adjective* nyeupe; wazi
**climate** hali ya hewa
**clinic** kliniki
**clock** saa
**close** kufunga
**closed: to be closed** kufungwa
**clothes** nguo
**clothes shop** duka la nguo
**cloud** wingu
**clown** chale
**club** klabu
**clutch** *of car* klachi
**coal** mkaa
**coal mine** mashimo ya makaa
**coast** sehemu ya pwani
**coat** koti
**cockroach** mende
**code: international code** kodi ya simu za nje
**coffee** kahawa; **coffee with milk** kahawa ya maziwa
**cognac** konyagi
**coins** pesa; senti
**cold** *adjective* baridi; **it is cold** kuna baridi; **I am cold** nasikia baridi; *noun* baridi; **I have a cold.** Nina mafuwa.
**cold water** maji ya baridi
**colleague** mwenzi
**college** shule kuu
**color** rangi
**color film** filmu ya rangi
**colorless** bila ya rangi
**comb** kitana
**combine harvester** kivuno nafaka
**come** kuja
**come!** njoo!
**come in!** karibu!
**comfortable: to be comfortable** kustarehesha; **The seat is comfortable.** Kiti kizuri.

**commission: What is the commission?** Asilimia ya faida?
**Commonwealth** Jumuia ya Madola
**communications** mawasiliano
**community** jamii
**companion** mwenzi
**compare** linganisha
**compass** dira
**compensation** fidia
**competition** mashindano
**complain** kulalamika
**complaint** malalamiko
**composer** mtungaji wa nyimbo
**composition** utenzi
**computer** kompyuta
**computer virus** virusi vya kompyuta
**concert** konseti
**concert hall** sehemu ya konseti
**concussion** *medical* jeraha la kichwa
**condition** hali
**condom** kondom
**conference** mkutano
**conference room** chumba cha mkutano
**confirm: I want to confirm my flight.** Nataka kukonfam tikti yangu ya ndege.
**confuse** kubabaika
**connection** unganisha
**constipation** kuziba choo
**constitution** katiba ya nchi
**consulate** konsuleti
**consultant** mshauri
**contact: I want to contact my embassy.** Nataka kuwajulisha balozi wangu.
**contact lenses** lenzi ya plastiki
**contain** kuwana
**container** *freight* chombo
**contemporary** ya wakati moja
**contest** mashindano
**continue** kuendelea
**contract** mkataba
**control** *verb* kuzuwia
**conversation** mazungumzo
**cook** *noun* mpishi; *verb* kupika
**cooker** jiko
**cool** baridi
**cooperation** ushirikiano
**copper** shaba
**copy** *noun* kopi; *verb* kuigiza
**corkscrew** ufunguo wa chupa ya mvino
**corn** mahindi
**corner** kona
**correct** *adjective* sahihi; *verb* kusahihisha
**corruption** kupotoa
**cost** bei; **How much does this cost?** Bei gani?
**cotton** pamba; sufi
**cotton wool** pamba
**cough** *noun* kohozi; *verb* kukohowa
**council** halmashauri
**count** *verb* kuhisabu
**counterfeit** bandia; **This money is counterfeit.** Pesa za bandia.
**country** nchi; **in the country** shamba
**countryside** shamba
**coup d'etat** mapinduzi
**court** *law* mahakama
**cow** ng'ombe
**cowrie shell** kauri
**craftsman** msanii
**crane** *machine* kreni
**crash** *verb* kuvunja
**crazy** mwenda wazimu
**create** sanii

**credit** mkopo
**credit card** kadi ya mkopo
**crime** ujambazi
**criminal** jambazi
**crisis** mtafaruku
**cross** *verb* kuvuka
**crossing** njia panda
**crossroads** njia panda
**crow** *bird* kunguru
**cruel** katili
**cry** kulia
**cucumber** tango
**culture** ustaarabu
**cup** kikombe
**cupboard** kabati
**cure** *noun* dawa; *verb* kutibu
**currency** fedha
**custom** *tradition* desturi; *border* kastamu
**cut** *verb* kukata
**cut off: I've been cut off.** Simu imekatwa.; **The electricity has been cut off.** Umeme umekatwa.; **The gas has been cut off.** Gesi imekatwa.; **The water has been cut off.** Maji yamefungwa.

# D

**dagger** jambia
**dairy** duka la kuuza maziwa
**dam** lambo
**dance; dancing** kucheza
**Dane** Mdenish
**danger** hatari
**Danish** *thing* ya Kdenish; *language* Kidenish
**dark** *adjective* giza
**dark; darkness** *noun* giza
**date** tarehe; **What date is it today?** Leo tarehe gani?
**date of arrival** tarehe ya kufika
**date of birth** tarehe ya kuzaliwa
**date of departure** tarehe ya kuondoka
**daughter** mtoto mwanamke
**dawn** *noun* alfajiri
**day** siku
**daytime** mchana
**dead** kufa
**deaf** kiziwi
**dear** *loved* mpenzi
**death** kifo
**debt** deni
**decade** miaka kumi
**December** Desemba
**decide** kuamuwa
**decision** uamuzi
**deep** chini sana
**deepwater platform** sehemu ya maji mengi
**deer** paa
**defeat** kushinda
**defend** kulinda
**delay** kuchelewa
**delayed** imechelewa; **The plane is delayed.** Ndege imechelewa.
**democracy** demokrasia
**demonstration** *political* maandamano
**demonstrators** *political* waandamaji
**dentist** daktari wa meno
**deodorant** dawa ya kuondowa harufu kwapani
**department store** duka la ghorofa
**departures** kuondoka
**deport** kufukuza nchini
**deportation** ufukuzajwi wa nchi
**depot** dipo

**deprive** kunyima
**derrick** winchi
**describe** kuelezea
**desert** *noun* jangwa
**desert** *verb* kuacha
**desire** *verb* kuwa na hamu
**desk** deski
**dessert** puding
**destroy** kuharibu
**detergent** sabuni
**development** kukuza
**devil** shetani
**diabetes** kisukari
**diabetic** mgonjwa wa kisukari
**diagnosis** *medical* utambuzi
**dial** kupiga simu
**dialect** lahaja
**dialing code for Zanzibar** kodi ya simu ya Zanzibar
**diaper** nepi; **I need to change my baby's diaper.** Nataka kubadilisha nepi ya mtoto.
**diarrhea** tumbo la kuhara
**diaspora** waafrika popote walipo duniani
**dictator** dikteta
**dictatorship** udikteta
**dictionary** kamusi
**die** kufa
**diesel** disel
**diet** *food* mpangilio wa chakula
**different** mbalimbali
**difficult** tabu
**dig** kuchimba
**dining car** sehemu ya kulia kwenye gari moshi
**dining room** chumba cha kulia
**dinner** chakula cha usiku
**diplomat** mwana diplomasia
**diplomatic ties** uhusiano wa diplomasia
**direct** moja kwa moja; **Can I dial direct?** Naweza kupiga simu moja kwa moja?
**directions** muwelekeo
**directory** kitabu cha orodha
**dirty** chafu
**disabled** mlemavu
**disaster** balaa
**disc jockey** mpiga muziki disko
**disco** disko
**discover** kuvumbuwa
**discuss** kujadili
**discussion** majadiliano
**disease** maradhi
**Displaced Person** mhamishwaji
**dispute** shindano; mgorogoro
**dissolve** kuyeyusha
**distant** masafa
**district** eneo
**diver** mpiga mbizi
**divide** gawa
**divorce** *noun* talaka
**dizzy: I feel dizzy.** Naona kizunguzungu.
**do** kufanya
**dock** gatini
**doctor** daktari
**document** shahada
**dog** mbwa
**doll** mtoto wa bandia
**dollar** dola
**donkey** punda
**door** mlango
**door lock** kitasa cha mlango
**double** mbili; **double bed** kitanda cha watu wawili; **double room** chumba cha watu wawili
**doubt** *noun* shaka
**down** chini
**drag** kuvuta; kuburura
**drain** mfereji
**draw** kuchora
**drawer** toto la meza
**dream** *noun* ndoto
**dress** *noun* kanzu

**dressed: to get dressed** kuvaa nguo
**dressmaker** mshoni
**drill** *verb* kuchimba
**drill a well** kuchimba kisima
**drink** *noun* kinywaji; *verb* kunywa
**drinking water** maji ya kunywa
**drive** *verb* kuendesha
**driver** mwendeshaji gari; dereva
**driver's license** leseni; kibali cha kuendesha gari
**drug** dawa
**drug addict** mteja wa madawa ya kulevya
**drum** ngoma
**drunk: to be drunk** kulewa; **I am drunk.** Nimelewa.
**drunk person** mlevi
**duck** bata
**during** wakati wa
**Dutch** *language* Kidachi; *thing* ya Kidachi
**Dutchman/Dutchwoman** Mdachi
**duty: customs duty** kodi ya kastam
**duvet** mfarishi
**dwell** kukaa
**dynamo** dainamo

# E

**each** kila; kila moja
**eagle** tai
**ear** shikio
**early** mapema
**earrings** herini
**earth** ardhi
**earthquake** mtetemeko wa ardhi
**east** *noun* mashariki
**east(ern)** *adjective* shariki
**Easter** Pasaka
**easy** rahisi
**eat** kula
**economics** uchumi
**economist** mchumi
**economy** *of country* uchumi
**editor** mhariri
**education** elimu
**egg** yai
**eight** nane
**eighteen** kumi na nane
**eighty** themanini
**elbow** kisugudi
**elder** mzee
**elect** chaguwa
**election** uchaguzi
**electrical goods store** duka la vifaa vya umeme
**electricity** umeme
**elevator** lifti
**eleven** kumi na moja
**e-mail** e-mail
**e-mail address** anwani ya e-mail
**embassy** ubalozi
**emergency** dharura
**emergency exit** mlango wa dharura
**empty** *adjective* tupu; *verb* kumwaga
**end** *noun* mwisho; *verb* kwisha
**enemy** aduwi
**engine** injin
**engineer** mhandishi
**England** Ungereza
**Englishman/Englishwoman** Mngereza
**English** *thing* ya Kingereza; *language* Kingereza; Kizungu
**enough: to be enough** tosha; **That's enough, thanks!** Inatosha, asante!
**enough!** basi!
**enquiry** maulizo
**enter** kuingia

**enterprise** bidii
**entire** yote
**entrance** mlango
**envelope** bahasha
**epidemic** magonjwa ya mlipuko
**epilepsy** kifafa
**Equator** Ikweta; Istiwai
**equipment** kifaa
**era** enzi
**escalator** ngazi ya umeme
**escape** kukimbia
**especially** zaidi hasa
**essay** insha
**establish** kuthibitisha
**etiquette** adabu; shakhsia
**euro** *currency* euro
**Europe** Ulaya
**European** *person* mtu wa Ulaya; *thing* ya Ulaya
**European Union** Muungano wa Ulaya
**evening** jioni; **good evening!** habari za jioni!
**every** yote
**everybody; everyone** watu wote
**everything** vitu vyote
**evidence** ushahidi
**exact** sahihi
**exam** mtihani
**examine** *medically* kuchunguwa
**example** mfano
**excellent** bora sana
**except (for)...** isipokuwa
**excess** ziada
**exchange** kubadilisha; **Do you exchange money?** Kubadilisha kwa pesa?
**excuse** *noun* sababu
**excuse me!** samahani!
**execute** kuuwa
**exercise** mazowezi
**exhaust** *of car* eksosti
**exhibit** kuonyesha
**exhibition** maonyesho
**exit** mlango wa kutokea
**expect** kutaraji
**expel** kufukuza
**expensive** ghali
**explain** kueleza
**explanation** maelezo
**explode** kuripuka
**exploration** upelelezaji
**explosion** mripuko
**explosives** baruti
**export** *noun* usafirishaji; *verb* safirisha
**express** *fast* kwa haraka
**extend** kupanua
**extra** ziada; **an extra blanket** blangeti jengine
**eye** jicho
**eyes** macho
**eyeglasses** miwani
**eyesight** kuona

# F

**face** uso
**fact** ukweli
**factory** kiwanda
**failure** kushindwa
**fall** *autumn* vuli; *verb* kuanguka
**false** bandia; uwongo
**family** jamii
**famous** maarufu
**fan** upepeo
**fan belt** ukanda wa feni ya gari
**far** mbali; **How far is the next village?** Umbali gani kijiji cha pili?
**fare** nauli; **What is the fare?** Nauli kiasi gani?
**farm** shamba
**farmer** mkulima
**farming** ukilima

**Farsi** *language* Kifarsi; Kibaharani
**fashion** mitindo
**fast** *quick* mbio mbio
**fasting: I am fasting.** Nimefunga.
**fat** *adjective* nene; *noun* mafuta
**father** baba
**faucet** mfereji
**fax** feksi
**fax machine** mashine ya feksi
**fear** *noun* khofu; *verb* kuogopa
**February** Februari
**federation** shirikisho
**feed** *verb* kulisha
**feeding station** sehemu ya kulisha
**feel** kuhisi
**female** mwanamke
**fence** uwa
**fender** *of car* bampa
**ferret** nguchiro
**ferry** feri
**fertile** yenye rutuba
**fertilizer** rutuba
**festival** tamasha; **film festival** tamasha la filmu; **music festival** tamasha la muziki
**feud** ugomvi mkubwa; khasama
**fever** homa
**field** shamba
**fifteen** kumi na tano
**fifty** hamsini
**fight** *verb* ngumi; ugomvi
**fighter** mpiganaji
**file** *paper* faili; *computer* faili la kompyuta
**fill** kujaza
**fill in a form** kujaza fomu
**film** *movie* filmu; sinema; *for camera* filmu ya kamera
**film festival** tamasha la filmu
**filmmaker** mfanyaji filmu
**filter** chungio
**final** *adjective* ya mwisho; *noun* mwisho
**finance** fedha
**find** kutafuta
**find out** kuchungua
**fine** *adjective* nzuri; *adverb* nzuri; *of money* tozwa; faini
**finger** kidole
**finish** *verb* kwisha
**fire** moto
**firewood** kuni
**first** mwanzo
**first class** fasti klasi
**fish** samaki
**fishing** kuvua
**five** tano
**fix** tengeneza
**flash** murika
**flashlight** tochi
**flat tire** pancha; **I have a flat tire.** Nimepata pancha.
**flea** kiroboto
**flee** kukimbia
**flight** *plane* ndege
**float** kuelea
**flock** kundi
**flood** mafuriko
**floor** *ground* ardhi; *story* ghorofa
**florist** duka la maua
**flour** unga
**flower** uwa
**flu** homa ya mafua
**fly** *noun* nzi; *verb* kuruka
**fog** umande
**foggy** mawingu
**folk** *noun* watu
**folk dancing** ngoma ya kiasili
**folklore** hadisi za kiasili
**folk music** muziki wa kiasili
**food** chakula
**fool** *noun* mpumbavu
**foot** mguu; *measurement* futi
**football** mpira wa miguu; futboli

**footpath** njia nyembamba
**forbid** kukataza
**forbidden** imekatazwa
**foreign** ugeni
**foreigner** mgeni
**forest** msitu
**forget** kusahau
**fork** uma
**form** *shape* umbo; *official* fomu
**fort** ngome
**fortnight** wiki mbili
**forty** arubaini
**forum** ukumbi
**forward(s)** mbele
**foundation** *organization* msingi; uanzishaji
**four** nne
**fourteen** kumi na nne
**fourth** ya nne
**fracture** *noun* mvunjiko; *verb* kuvunjika
**franc** faranga
**free** bure; **Is this seat free?** Ninaweza kukaa hapa?
**free of charge** bure; hakuna malipo
**freedom** uhuru
**freeze** kuganda kwa baridi
**freezing** baridi sana
**freight** *noun* mizigo
**French** *thing* ya Kifaransa; *language* Kifaransa
**Frenchman/Frenchwoman** Mfaransa
**french fries** chips
**fresh** mpya; *cool* burudani
**Friday** Ijumaa
**fridge** friji
**friend** rafiki
**frighten** kutisha
**frog** chura
**front** *noun* mbele; **in front of** mbele ya
**frontier** mpaka
**frost** barafu
**frostbite** ungonjwa wa baridi ya barafu
**fruit** fruti
**fruit juice** maji ya fruti; maji matamu
**fuel** petroli; mafuta
**fuel dump** ghala ya mafuta
**full: to be full** kujaa
**full moon** mwezi mpevu
**full up: I am full up!** Nimeshiba!
**funeral** maziko
**funny** ya kuchekesha
**furniture** fanicha
**future** wakati ujao

# G

**gala** shangwe
**gallon** galon
**game** mchezo
**game park** hifadhi ya wanyama
**game park warden** bwana nyama
**gangrene** gangarini
**garage** gereji
**garden** bustani
**garbage** taka
**garlic** kitunguu; thomu
**garrison** bomani
**gas** gesi; *petrol* petroli
**gas bottle/canister** chupa ya gesi
**gate** lango
**gear** gia
**general** *adjective* kwa yote; *noun* jenerali
**genitals** sehemu nyeti
**genocide** mauwaji ya kabila
**geologist** mtaalamu wa jiolojia

**German** *person* Mjerumani; *thing* ya Kijerumani; *language* Kijerumani
**Germany** Jerumani
**germs** mbegu
**get** kupata
**gift** zawadi
**girl** msichana
**girlfriend** *see note on page 103*
**give birth (to)** kuzaa
**give** kutowa; **give me...** nipe...
**glass** *substance* kigae; *drinking* gilasi; bilauri
**glass of water** gilasi ya maji
**glasses** miwani
**gloves** glavu
**go** kwenda
**go!** nenda!; **let's go!** twende!
**go out** kutuka nje
**go to bed** kwenda kulala
**goal** *aim* dhamiri; *football* goli
**goat** mbuzi
**God** Mungu
**gold** dhahabu
**golf** gofu
**good** nzuri
**good-bye!** kwa heri!
**goose** bata
**government** serikali
**grain** ngano
**gram** gramu
**grammar** sarufi
**grandchild** mjukuu
**grandfather** babu
**grandmother** bibi
**grape** zabibu
**grass** majani
**grateful: I am grateful.** Ninashukurani.
**grave** *serious* mashaka; *noun* kaburi
**gravel** changarawe
**great** kubwa
**greatest** kubwa sana
**Greek** *person* Mgiriki; *thing* ya Kigiriki; *language* Kigiriki
**Greece** Ugirisi
**green** kijani
**greengrocer** duka la mboga
**grind** *verb* kusaga
**groom** *horses* saisi
**ground** ardhi
**group** kundi
**grow** kuota
**grow crops** kupanda mbegu
**grow up** kuwa mkubwa
**guard** *verb* kulinda; *noun* mlinzi; askari; **border guard** mlinzi wa mpaka
**guerrilla** mpiganaji wa kuvizia
**guest** mgeni
**guest speaker** spika mgeni
**guesthouse** gesti-house
**guide** *noun* papasi; *verb* kuongoza
**guidebook** kitabu cha ramani
**gum** gundi; **chewing gum** ubani
**gun** bunduki
**gynecologist** mwana ginokolojia

# H

**hair** nywele
**hairbrush** brashi ya nywele
**haircut: I want a haircut please.** Nataka kukata nywele.
**hairdresser** kinyozi
**hairdryer** mashine ya kukausha nywele
**half** nusu
**hamburger** hambaga
**hammer** nyundo
**hand** *noun* kiganja
**handbag** mkoba wa mkononi
**handicraft** kazi ya mkono

**handle** *noun* cha kukamatia
**hand over** kutoa
**hang** *thing* tundika
**hangar** banda la ndege
**hanger** *clothes* henga
**hangover** maumivu ya kichwa kutokana na pombe
**happen** kutokea
**happy** furaha
**harbor** gatini
**hard** *not soft* ngumu; *difficult* tabu
**hardware store** duka la vifaa vya nyumba
**harmful** ya kudhuru
**harvest** mazao
**hat** kofia
**hate** *verb* kuchukia
**have** kuwa nayo
**have to** kuimebidi
**hay** nyasi kavu
**he** yeye
**head** kichwa; *boss* bosi
**headache** maumivu ya kichwa
**head of state** mkuu wa nchi
**headquarters** makao makuu
**heal** kupona
**health** siha
**healthcare** huduma za siha
**healthy** uzima
**hear** kusikia
**heart** moyo
**heart attack** maradhi ya moyo
**heart condition** maradhi ya moyo
**heat** *noun* joto; *verb* kupasha moto
**heating coil** koili ya kupasha moto
**heatwave** ujoto
**heaven** pepo
**heavy** nzito
**helicopter** helikopta
**hell** motoni
**hello!** hujambo!; *response:* sijambo!
**help** *noun* msaada; *verb* kusaidia; **Can you help me?** Unaweza kunisaidia?
**help!** nisaidieni!
**hen** kuku
**hepatitis** hepatitis
**her** *object pronoun* -m-; *possessive pronoun* yake
**herb** mitishamba
**herd** kundi
**here** hapa
**hero** shujaa
**hers** yake
**herself** yeye mwenyewe
**hide** *verb* kuficha
**high** juu
**high blood pressure** presha ya damu iko juu
**highway** barabara kuu
**hijack** kuteka nyara
**hijacker** mteka nyara
**hijacking** kuteka nyara
**hike** kutembezi marefu
**hill** mlima
**him** -m-
**himself** yeye mwenyewe
**Hindu** Baniani
**Hinduism** Ubaniani
**hire** kukodi
**his** yake mwanamume
**historian** mwana historia
**history** historia
**hit** kupiga
**hold** kushika
**hole** shimo
**holiday** likizo
**homeland** nyumbani
**homeless** asopokuwa na pakukaa
**honey** asali
**honeymoon** *noun* fungate ya harusi
**hood** *of car* kipaa cha gari

**hook** *noun* ndoana
**horse** farasi
**horseback riding** kupanda farasi
**horse racing** resi za farasi
**horse show** maonyesho ya farasi
**hose** mpira wa maji
**hospital** hospitali
**host** mwenyeji
**hostage: to take hostage** teka nyara
**hostel** hosteli; hoteli
**hot** joto; **I am hot.** Nasikia joto.; **It is hot.** Joto.
**hot water** maji ya moto
**hotel** hoteli
**hour** saa
**house** nyumba
**housing project** nyumba za msajili
**how?** vipi?
**how are you?** uhali gani?
**how far?** umbali gani?
**how many?** ngapi?
**how much?** kiasi gani?
**however** ingawaje
**human** binaadamu
**human being** mwana adamu
**human rights** haki za binaadamu
**humanitarian** ubinaadamu
**humanitarian aid** msaada wa binaadamu
**humor** ucheshi
**humorous** uchekeshaji
**hundred** mia
**hungry** njaa
**hungry: I'm hungry.** Nina njaa.
**hunt** kuwinda
**hurry: I'm in a hurry.** Nina haraka.
**hurt: Where does it hurt?** Wapi panauma?; **It hurts here.** Hapa panauma.
**husband** mume
**hygiene** usafi

# I

**I** mimi
**ice** barafu
**ice cream** aisikrim
**I.D.** kitambulisho
**idea** fikra
**identification** kitambulisho
**if** kama
**if possible** kama inawezekana
**ill: to be ill** kuumwa; **I am ill.** Ninaumwa.
**illegal** haramu
**illness** maradhi
**image** picha
**imam** imamu
**immigrant** mgeni
**immigration** uhamiaji
**import** *verb* kuingiza
**importance** umuhimu
**important** muhimu
**impossible** haiwezekani
**improve** kufanya bora
**in** ndani ya
**in front of** mbele ya
**included** pamoja na
**independence** uhuru
**independent** huru; **independent state** nchi huru
**India** Bara Hindi; India
**Indian** *person* Mhindi; *thing* ya Kihindi
**indicator light** indiketa
**indigestion** ziba choo
**industry** viwanda
**infant** mtoto mchanga
**infection** maambukizo
**influenza** homa ya flu
**information** habari

**information office** ofisi ya habari
**injure** kuumiza
**injured: to be injured** kuumia
**injury** maumivu
**ink** wino
**inner-tube** mpira wa ndani
**innocent** bila ya kosa
**inquiry** maulizo
**insane** wazimu
**inscription** mwandiko
**insect** mdudu
**insects** vidudu
**insecticide** kiuwa wa dudu
**instead** badala
**institute** taasisi
**insurance** bima; **I have medical insurance.** Ninayo bima ya siha.
**insured: My possessions are insured.** Vitu vyangu vina bima.
**intend** kukusudia
**interest** hamu; *financial* faida
**interesting** yenye kupendeza
**interior** *noun* ndani; *adjective* ya ndani
**internal** ya ndani
**international code** kodi ya international
**international flight** ndege ya international
**international operator** oporeta wa international
**internet** internet
**interpreter** mkalimani
**interval** mapumziko
**interview** mahojio
**into** ndani ya
**introduce** julisha
**invasion** kuvamia
**invention** kuumba
**inventor** muumbaji; msanii
**investigate** kuchunguza
**investigation** uchunguzi
**invitation** muwaliko
**invite** alika
**Iran** Iran
**Iranian** *person* Mwiran; *person* Baharani; *thing* ya Iran
**Ireland** Ireland
**Irish** *person* Mwirish; *thing* ya Kiirish; *language* Kiirish
**iron** *for clothes* pasi
**Islam** Islam
**Islamic** ya Kiislamu
**Israel** Israili
**Israeli** *person* Yahudi; *thing* ya Kiyahudi
**it** hiyo
**Italian** *person* Mtaliana; *thing* ya Kitaliana; *language* Kitaliana
**Italy** Italy
**itch** *noun* muwasho

# J

**jack** *of car* jaki
**jacket** koti
**January** Januari
**Japan** Japan
**Japanese** *person* Mjapani; *thing* ya Kijapani; *language* Kijapani
**jaw** kemwe
**jazz** jazz
**jeans** jeans
**jewelry** *gold* vyombo vya dhahabu; *silver* vyombo vya fedha
**Jew; Jewish** *person* Myahudi
**Jewish** *thing* ya Kiyahudi
**job** kazi
**joke** kichekesho
**journalist** mwandishi wa habari
**Judaism** Uyahudi
**judge** hakimu

**July** Julai
**June** Juni
**junior** mdogo
**justice** hukumu

# K

**kebab** mshikaki
**keep** kuweka
**ketchup** kechap
**kettle** buli
**key** ufunguo
**kidnap** kuteka nyara
**kidnapper** mteka nyara
**kidnapping** kuteka nyara
**kidney** ini
**kill** kuua
**killer** muuaji
**kilogram** kilo
**kilometer** kilomita
**kind** *adjective* imani; **what kind?** aina gani?
**king** mfalme
**kiosk** kibanda
**kiss** busu
**kitchen** jikoni
**knee** goti
**kneel** kupiga goti
**knife** kisu
**knock** kugonga
**know** kujua; **I know.** Ninajua.; **I don't know.** Sijui.; **Do you know him/her?** Una mjua?
**knowledge** ujuzi
**known: well-known** maarufu
**Koran** Kurani

# L

**laboratory** lebo
**lack** *noun* ukosefu
**ladder** ngazi
**lake** mto
**lamb** kondoo
**lamp** taa
**land** *noun* ardhi; *verb (airplane)* kutuwa kwa ndege
**landslide** maporomoko ya ardhi
**language** lugha
**lap** paja
**laptop** *computer* kompyuta ndogo
**large** kubwa
**larger** kubwa sana
**last** mwisho
**late: to be late** kuchelewa
**laugh** kucheka
**laundry** dobi
**law** sharia
**law court** korti
**lawyer** wakili
**lay** kuweka chini
**lazy** mvivu
**lead** *noun* kamba; *verb* kuongoza
**leader** mwongozaji
**leaf** jani
**leak** kuvuja
**lean** *adjective* nyembamba; *verb* kuelemea
**leap** kuruka
**leap year** mwaka mfupi
**learn** kusoma
**leather** ngozi
**leave** kuondoka
**Lebanon** Lebanan; Libnan
**Lebanese** *person* Mlebananiz; Mlibnan; *thing* ya Kilebananiz
**lecture** mhadhara
**left** kushoto
**left-wing** mrengo wa kushoto
**leg** mguu
**legal** ya sharia
**legend** ngano
**lemon** limau
**lend** kuazima
**lengthen** kufanya refu

**lens** miwani; **contact lenses** lenzi za plastiki
**less** kidogo
**lesson** somo
**letter** barua
**lettuce** mboga ya kachumbai
**level** *adjective* sawa; *noun* usawa
**lever** wenzo
**liberation** uhuru
**library** maktaba
**lice** chawa
**lie** *noun* uwongo
**lie down** lala chini
**life** maisha
**lift** *elevator* lifti; *verb* kunyanyua
**light** *not dark* isokoza; *not heavy* nyepesi sio nzito; *verb* kuwasha; *noun* mwangaza; **Do you have a light?** Unacho kibiriti?
**light a fire** kuwasha moto
**lightbulb** globu
**lighter** kibiriti; laita
**lighter fluid** mafuta ya kibiriti
**lighthouse** mnara wa taa
**light meter** mita ya umeme
**lighting** taa
**lightning** radi
**like** *preposition* kama; *verb* kupenda; **I like...** Ninapenda.../ Napenda...; **I don't like...** Sipendi...
**like that** kama vile
**like this** kama hivi
**likely: to be likely** kuelekea
**limbs** viungo
**lime** *fruit* ndimu
**limit** kikomo
**line** mstari
**linguist** mwana isimu
**linguistics** isimu
**lip** mdomo
**lipstick** rangi ya mdomo
**list** orodha
**listen** kusikiliza
**liter** lita
**literature** fasihi
**little** kidogo; **a little bit** kidogo sana
**live** *adjective* -hai
**live** *verb* kuwa hai; *dwell* kuishi/kukaa
**liver** maini
**lizard** mjusi
**loaf** mkate
**local: a local shop for local people** duka la mtani
**location** pahala
**lock** *noun* kitasa; *verb* kufunga
**locomotive** treni
**long** refu
**look** kutazama
**look for** kutafuta
**loose change** senti
**lose** kupoteza;
**lost: I have lost my key.** Nimepoteza funguo zangu.; **I am lost.** Nimepotea.
**lot; a lot** nyingi
**loud** kelele
**loudly** kwa kelele
**louse** chawa
**love** *noun* pendo; *verb* kupenda
**low** chini; **low blood pressure** presha ya damu iko chini
**LP** sahani ya santuri
**luck** bahati
**lunch** chakula cha mchana
**lung** mapafu

# M

**machete** panga
**machine** mashine
**madrasa** chuo
**magazine** magazeti
**magnetic** yenye sumaku
**mail** barua

**mailbox** boksi la barua
**main** kubwa; **main square** mjini
**maintain** weka
**maize** mahindi
**majority** wingi
**make** kufanya
**make-up** podari za usoni; vipodozi; rangi za uso
**malaria** malaria
**male** mwanamume
**mammal** mamalia
**man** mwanamume; mtu
**manager** meneja; mkurugenzi
**manual** *book* kitabu cha mwongozo
**many** nyingi; **too many** nyingi sana; **how many?** ngapi?
**map** ramani; **map of Zanzibar** ramani ya Zanzibar
**March** Machi
**mare** farasi jike
**mark** alama; *currency* maki
**market** soko; marikiti
**marriage** ndoa
**married: I am married.** *said by a man* Nimeoa.; *said by a woman* Nimeolewa.
**marsh** bwawa
**martyr** shahidi
**mascara** wanja
**match** *football* mechi ya mpira
**matches** kibiriti
**material** kitambaa
**mathematics** hesabu
**matter: It doesn't matter!** Hamna neno!
**mattress** godoro
**mausoleum** kaburi kubwa
**May** Mei
**may I?** ninaweza?
**maybe** labda
**me** mimi
**meal** chakula
**meals** vyakula
**mean: What does this mean?** Hii ina maana gani?
**meaning** maana
**measure** *verb* kupima
**meat** nyama
**mechanic** fundi wa gari
**media** njia za mawasiliano
**medical** ya siha
**medical insurance** bima ya siha
**medication** dawa
**medicine** dawa
**meet** kuonana
**meeting** mkutano
**melon** tikiti
**member** mwanachama
**memory** kumbukumbu
**menu** menyu
**mercenary** askari wa malipo
**message** maagizo
**metal** chuma
**meter** *measure* mita; **light meter** mita ya umeme
**middle** kati
**midnight** usiku wa manane
**midwife** mkunga
**mile** meli
**military** *adjective* ya jeshi
**milk** maziwa
**mill** kinu
**millet** mtama
**million** milioni
**minaret** mnara
**mine** *mineral* madini; *explosive* mabomu
**minefield** eneo lilozikwa mabomu
**miner** mfanya kazi wa madini
**mineral** madini
**mineral water** maji ya chemchem
**minister** waziri
**ministry** wizara

**Ministry of Agriculture** wizara ya kilimo
**Ministry of Defense** wizara ya jeshi
**Ministry of Education** wizara ya elimu
**Ministry of Foreign Affairs** wizara ya mambo ya nje
**Ministry of Health** wizara ya siha
**Ministry of Home Affairs** wizara ya mambo ya ndani
**Ministry of Justice** wizara ya sheria
**Ministry of Transport** wizara ya usafiri
**minority** wachache
**minute** *noun* dakika
**miracle** miujiza
**mirror** kioo
**miss** kukosa
**Miss** Bi
**missile** kombora
**mist** umande
**mistake** makosa; **to make a mistake** kufanya makosa
**mobile phone** simu ya mkono; mobitel
**model** *example* kifani
**modem** modemu ya kompyuta
**modern** ya kisasa
**moment** dakika
**monarch** mfalme
**monastery** nyumba ya watawa
**Monday** Jumatatu
**money** pesa; fedha; hela
**month** mwezi
**monument** jengo la ukumbusho
**moon** mwezi; **full moon** mwezi mpevu; **new moon** mwezi uloandama; mwezi mchanga
**more** zaidi
**more or less** takriban
**morning** asubuhi; **good morning!** habari ya asubuhi!; **this morning** asubuhi ya leo
**mosque** msikiti
**mosquito** mbu
**most** nyingi
**mother** mama
**motorbike** motosaikal; pikipiki
**motorway** barabara kuu
**mountain** mlima
**mouse** panya
**mouth** mdomo
**move** kuondoka
**movie** mchezo wa sinema
**Mr.** Bwana
**Mrs.** Bibi
**Ms.** Bibi
**much** nyingi; **not much** sio nyingi; **too much** nyingi sana; **how much?** Ngapi; **how much is it?** Kiasi gani?
**mud** matope
**muffler** *of car* eksosti
**mug** *noun* magi; *verb* kuvamia na kumwibia
**mugger** mvamizi
**mugging** uvamizi
**mule** nyumbu
**mullah** imamu
**murder** *noun* ua; *verb* kuua
**murderer** mwuaji
**museum** makumbusho
**music** musiki
**music festival** tamasha la muziki
**Muslim** *person* Mwislamu; *thing* ya Kiislamu
**must** *see* **have to**
**mustache** masharubu
**mustard** uwatu
**my** yangu
**myself** mimi mwenyewe

# N

**nail** msumari; **fingernail** kucha
**nail clippers** cha kukatia makucha
**name** jina; **surname** jina la babu; **What is your name?** Jina lako nani?; **My name is Fred.** Jina langu Fred.
**napkin** hanchifu
**nappy** nepi; **I need to change my baby's diaper.** Nataka kubadilisha nepi ya mtoto.
**narrow** nyembamba
**nation** *state* taifa; *people* watu
**nationality** uraia
**natural disaster** maafa
**natural resources** maliasili
**nature** ulimwenguni
**navy** kikosi cha bahari
**near** karibu (ya)
**nearby** karibu sana
**nearly** takriban
**necessary: it's necessary** lazima
**neck** shingo
**necklace** kidani
**necktie** tai
**need** kuhitaji; **I need...** Ninahitaji...
**needle** shindano; sindano; **Do you have needle and thread?** Una uzi na shindano?
**negotiator** mpatanishi
**neighbor** jirani
**neither** wala
**nerve** neva
**net: mosquito net** chandaruwa; **fishing net** wavu
**never** kamwe
**new** mpya; **new moon** mwezi mchanga
**news** habari
**New Year** Mwaka Mpya
**New Zealand** New Zealand
**news** habari
**newspaper** gazeti; **newspaper in English** gazeti la Kingereza
**newsstand** duka la magazeti
**next** ya pili; **next week** wiki ijayo
**nice** nzuri
**night** usiku; **good night!** lala salama!
**nightclub** disco
**nightguard; nightwatchman** askari; mlinzi
**nine** tisa
**nineteen** kumi na tisa
**ninety** tisiini
**no** sio
**no entry** hakuna ruhusa kupita
**no smoking** hakuna ruhusa kuvuta sigara
**no sugar** bila ya sukari
**nobody** hakuna mtu
**noise** ghasia
**noisy** makelele
**noon** mchana
**normal** kawaida
**north** *noun* kaskazini
**north(ern)** ya kaskazini
**Northern Ireland** Northern Ireland
**nose** pua
**not** sio; **do not...!** usifanye...!
**note: bank note** noti
**notebook** kitabu cha kuandikia
**nothing** hapana kitu
**nought** sifuri
**noun** jina
**novel** kitabu cha hadithi; **novels in English** kitabu cha hadithi za Kingereza
**November** Novemba
**now** sasa; **right now** sasa hivi
**nowhere** si popote

**number** nambari
**nurse** mwuguzi
**nut** njugu

**obligation** wajibu
**observer** mwangalizi
**occupation** *job* kazi
**occupation of a country** nchi iliyo vamiwa
**occupying forces** jeshi la uvamizi
**occur** kutokea
**o'clock: It is six o'clock.** Saa sita.
**October** Oktoba
**of** ya/wa/cha, *etc*
**office** ofisi
**officer** ofisa
**office worker** mfanyakazi wa ofisi
**often** mara kwa mara
**oil** *cooking* mafuta ya kupikia
**oilcan** mkebe wa mafuta
**oilfield** sehemu inotowa mafuta
**oil pipeline** bomba ya mafuta
**oil production** sehemu inozalisha mafuta
**oil refinery** sehemu ya kusafisha mafuta
**oil spill** mafuta yaliyo mwagika
**oil tanker** gari la kuchukuwa mafuta
**oil well** kisima cha mafuta
**oil worker** mfanyakazi wa mafuta
**old: old city** mji mkongwe; **old person** mzee; **How old are you?** Una miaka mingapi?; **I am ... years old.** Nina miaka ...
**on** juu ya; **Is the bus on time?** Basi limechelewa?
**once** mara moja
**one** moja
**one-way street** njia ya kwenda tu
**one-way ticket** tikti ya kwenda tu
**only** *adjective* pekee; *adverb* tu
**onto** *preposition* juu ya
**open** *adjective* wazi; *verb* kufungua
**opera** opera
**operating theater/room** chumba cha upasuaji
**operation** *surgical* oparesheni
**operator** mwendeshaji; **telephone operator** opereta wa simu
**opposite** mkabala (wa)
**opposition** upinzani
**or** au
**orange** *fruit* jungwa; *color* rangi ya majano
**orchard** shamba la matunda
**order** *noun* amri; *verb, someone* kuamrisha; **to order a meal** kuoda chakula
**ordinary** kawaida
**origin** asili
**original** ya asili
**orphan** yatima
**other** nyengine
**ounce** auns
**our** yetu
**ourselves** sisi wenyewe
**out** nje; **to go out** kwenda nje
**outside** nje
**overcoat** koti la baridi
**overtake** kuovateik
**owl** bunju
**own** *adjective* enyewe; *verb* kuwa na
**oxygen** hewa

# P

**package** bahasha; furushi
**padlock** kufuli
**pain** maumivu
**painkiller** dawa ya kuvunja maumivu
**painkillers** dawa za kuvunja maumivu
**paint** *noun* rangi; *verb* kutia rangi
**painter** mpaka rangi
**painting** kupaka rangi
**Pakistan** Pakistani
**Pakistani** *person* Mpakistani; *thing* ya Kipakistani
**palace** kasri
**pale** ilio kwajuka
**pantyhose** tait
**paper** *substance* karatasi; *newspaper* gazeti; *article* makala ya gazeti; **a piece of paper** karatasi
**parachute** parashut
**paradise** pepo
**paralyze** pooza
**parcel** bahasha
**parents** wazee
**park** *noun* bustani; *verb* kuweka gari
**parliament** bunge
**part** kiasi; sehemu
**participate** kushiriki
**party** pati; *political* chama cha siasa
**pass** *noun* kibali; *verb* kupita
**passable: Is the road passable?** Njia ya kuweza kupita?
**passenger** abiria
**passport** paspoti
**passport number** nambari ya paspoti
**past** *adjective* iliyopita; *noun* pita
**pasta** tambi
**path** ujia mwembamba
**patient** *medical* mgonjwa
**pay** *noun* malipo; *verb* kulipa
**payment** malipo
**pay phone** simu ya kibanda
**peace** amani
**peace talks** mazungumzo ya amani
**peace-keeping troops** jeshi la amani
**peach** pichi
**peak** kilele
**pearl** lulu
**peasant** mshamba
**pediatrician** mganga wa watoto
**pediatrics** matibabu ya watoto
**pelvis** fupa la nyonga
**pen** kalamu
**pencil** penseli
**penicillin** penesilin
**penknife** kisu cha kukunja
**people** watu
**pepper** pilipili
**perfect** nzuri; iliyokamilika
**perform** kucheza
**performance** mchezo
**perfume** mafuta mazuri
**perhaps** labda
**period** *of time* wakati; *menstrual* hedhi
**Persian** *person* Mbaharani; *thing* ya Kibaharani
**person** mtu
**petrol** petroli
**pharmacy** duka la madawa
**phone** *noun* simu; *verb* kupiga simu
**photo** picha
**photocopier** mashine ya fotokopi

**photocopy** *noun* fotokopi; *verb* kutoa fotokopi
**photographer** mpiga picha
**photography** upigaji wa picha
**physics** fizikia
**physiotherapy** mganga wa viungo
**piano** piano
**pickax** kishoka
**picture** picha
**pig** nguruwe
**pill** kidonge cha dawa
**pillow** mto
**pilot** mwendeshaji wa ndege
**pin** pini
**pink** waridi
**pipe** *tube* bomba; *smoking* kiko
**pirate** haramia
**pistol** bastola ya mkono
**pitch** *football* uwanja wa mpira
**pizza** piza
**place** pahala; sehemu
**place of birth** pahali pa kuzaliwa
**plain** *noun* uwanda
**plane** ndege
**plank** ubao
**plant** mti
**planting** kuotesha miti
**plastic** plastik
**plate** sahani
**platform** sehemu ya kupandia treni
**platform number** numbari ya sehemu ya kupandia treni
**play** *theater* mchezo; *verb* kucheza
**play a musical instrument** kupiga chombo cha muziki
**please!** tafadhali!
**pleasure** raha
**plow** *verb* kulima
**plug** *bath* plagi (ya bafu); *electric* plagi (ya umeme)
**plum** plamu
**p.m.** *see note on page 187*
**poach** *animals/game* kuwinda iso halali
**poacher: game poacher** jangili
**pocket** mfuko
**podium** kiriri
**poem** shairi
**poet** mshairi
**poison** sumu
**police** polisi
**police station** kituo cha polisi
**policeman** askari
**polite** heshima
**political** ya siasa
**politician** mwana wa siasa
**politics** siasa
**polo** polo
**pony** farasi mdogo
**pool** bwawa
**poor** masikini
**population** idadi ya watu
**pork** nyama ya nguruwe
**port** gati
**portable T.V.** televisheni ndogo
**portion** kiasi
**portrait** picha
**position** mkao
**possible** yawezekana; **if possible** ikiwezekana
**post office** posta
**postcard** postkadi
**potato** mbatata; kiazi
**pottery** vyungu
**pound** *weight* ratili; *sterling* pauni
**pour** kumimina
**powder** podari
**power** nguvu
**praise** kusifu
**pray** kusali
**prefer** kupenda zaidi

**pregnant: I'm pregnant.** Nina mimba.
**premier** raisi
**prepare** kutayarisha
**present** *time* sasa; *gift* zawadi
**president** raisi
**presidential guard** askari wa raisi
**press: the press** waandishi wa habari
**pressure** presha; **high blood pressure** presha ya damu iko juu; **low blood pressure** presha ya damu iko chini
**previously** iliyopita
**price** bei
**pride** kiburi
**priest** kasisi
**prime minister** raisi mkuu
**print** kuchapa
**printer** *computer* printa ya kompyuta
**printer's** duka la uchapishaji
**prison** jela
**prisoner** mfungwa
**prisoner-of-war** mfungwa wa vita
**prize** zawadi
**probable** yamkini; **it is probable** ina yumkin
**probably** labda
**problem** matata; **no problem!** hakuna matata!
**product** mazao bidhaa
**profession** kazi
**professional** *person* mfanyakazi ya kulipwa
**professor** mwalimu mkuu
**program: radio program** kipindi cha redio; **computer program** programu cha komyuta
**projector** projekta
**pronounce** kutamka
**pronunciation** matamshi
**proof** ushahidi
**prosthesis** viungo vya bandia
**protect** kuhifadhi
**protection** mahifadhi
**protest** *noun* pingo; *verb* kupinga
**proud: to be proud** kujivunia
**prove** kuthibitisha
**proverb** methali
**pub** baa
**public phone** simu ya kibanda
**publish** kuchapisha
**publisher** mchapishaji
**pull** kuvuta
**pump** *noun* pampu; *verb* vuta
**pumpkin** boga
**puncture** pancha; **I have a puncture.** Nimepata pancha.
**punish** kutia adabu
**pupil** mwanafunzi
**purple** zambarau
**push** kusukuma
**put** kuweka
**put on clothes** kuvaa nguo

**quarter** *area* kituo cha mji; **one-quarter** robo; **three-quarters** moja kasorobo
**queen** malkia
**question** suali
**queue** foleni
**quick** haraka
**quickly** mbiombio
**quiet** *adjective* kimya
**quietly** polepole
**quilt** mfarishi
**quit** kuacha
**quiz** chemsha bongo

# R

**rabbit** sungura
**rabies** kichaa cha mbwa
**radar** rada
**radiator** redieta
**radio** redio; **radio broadcast** matangazo cha redio; **radio program** kipindi cha redio; **radio station** kituo cha redio
**raid** shambulio
**railway** treni
**railway station** kituo cha treni
**rain** mvua; **it is raining** mvua inanyesha
**rainbow** upinde wa mvua
**ram** kondoo dume
**Ramadan** Ramadhani
**range** kadiri
**rape** kunajisi kimwili; **I've been raped.** Nimenajisiwa.
**rapid** haraka
**rapidly** mbiombio
**rat** panya
**rate** *speed* mwendo
**ravine** korongo
**raw** mbichi
**razor** kijembe
**razor blade** kijembe cha kunyolea ndevu
**reactionary** kupinga maedeleo
**read** kusoma
**reading** kusoma
**ready** tayari; **I am ready.** Niko tayari.
**real** kweli
**realize** kutambua
**reality** ukweli
**reaping** mavuno
**reason** sababu; **for that reason** kwa sababu; **reason for travel** sababu ya kusafiri
**rebel** *noun* nunda
**receipt** risiti
**receive** kupokea
**recently** hivi karibuni
**reception desk** sehemu ya mapokezi
**recognize** kutambua
**record** *noun* rekodi; *verb* rekodi
**red** nyekundu
**Red Cross** Msalaba Mwekundu
**referee** referee
**refinery** kiwanda cha kusafisha
**refrigerator** friji
**refugee** mkimbizi
**refugees** wakimbizi
**refugee camp** sehemu ya wakimbizi
**regime** mfumo wa utawala
**region** sehemu
**registered mail** barua ya regista
**reign** *noun* utawala
**relationship** uhusiano
**relative** jamaa
**relatives** majamaa
**relax** kustarehe
**release** wachilia
**relief aid** msaada
**religion** dini
**remain** kusalia
**remember** kumbuka
**repair** *noun* matengenezo; *verb* kutengeneza
**repeat** kurejea
**replace** kurejesha
**reply** *noun* jibu; *verb* jibu
**report** ripoti
**represent** wakilisha
**representation** mawakilisho
**representative** muwakilishi
**republic** jamhuri
**research** uchunguzi; utafiti
**reservation** *ticket* reservation; **I have a reservation.** Ninayo reservation.
**reserve: game reserve**

hifadhi wa wanyama; **Can I reserve a place/seat?** Ninaweza kurezav?
**rest** *noun* mapumziko; *remainder* ilobaki; *verb* kupumzika
**restaurant** mkahawa
**return** kurejea
**return ticket** tikti ya kurejea
**reverse** kurudi nyuma
**review** *newspaper* makala
**revolution** mapinduzi
**rice** *raw* mchele; *cooked* wali
**rich** tajiri
**ride a horse** kupanda farasi
**rifle** bunduki
**Rift Valley** Bonde la Ufa
**right** *side* kulia; *correct* sawa; **You are right.** Uko sawa.
**right-wing** mrengo wa kulia
**rights: civil rights** haki za raia; **human rights** haki za binaadamu
**ring** *noun* pete; *verb* kupiga simu; **I want to ring Emma.** Nataka kumpigia simu Emma.
**riot** fujo
**ripe** wiva
**rise** kuinuka
**risk** hatari
**river** mto
**river bank** ukingo wa mto
**road** njia
**road map** ramani ya njia
**roadblock** njia imefungwa
**road sign** alama ya njia
**rob** kwiba; **I've been robbed.** Nimeibiwa.
**robbery** wizi
**rock** jiwe; jabali
**roof** paa
**room** chumba; **single room** chumba cha mtu mmoja; **double room** chumba cha watu wawili
**room number** nambari ya chumba
**room service** huduma za chumba
**rooster** jogoo
**rope** kamba
**rosary** tasbihi
**rose** waridi
**roundabout** raundabaut; kipulefti
**route** njia
**row** *line* safu
**royal** ya kifalme
**rubber** raba
**rubbish** taka
**rubble** kifusi
**rude** fedhuli
**rug** zulia
**rugby** ragbi
**ruins** magofu
**ruler** *person* mtawala; *measure* mstari
**run** kukimbia
**run out** kwisha; **I have run out of gas.** Nimeishiwa na petroli.
**Russia** Urusi
**Russian** *person* Mrusi; *thing* ya Kirusi; *language* Kirusi
**rust** *noun* kutu

# S

**sack** gunia; *verb* kufukuza kazi
**sad** huzuni
**safe** salama
**safety** usalama
**safety pin** pini
**sail** *verb* kuendesha kwa tanga
**sailboard** chelezo cha tanga
**sailboat** mashua ya matanga
**saint** sahaba
**salad** kachumbari; saladi

**salesperson** mwuzaji
**salon: beauty salon** duka la urembo
**salt** chumvi
**salty** chumvichumvi
**sand** mchanga
**sandwich** sandweji
**sanitary towels** sodo
**satellite** satalait
**satellite phone** simu ya satalait
**satisfactory** yenye kutosheleza
**satisfied** imetosheleza
**Saturday** Jumamosi
**sausage** soseji
**save** *rescue* kuhifadhi; *money* kuweka pesa benki
**saw** *noun* msumeno; *verb* kukata
**say** kusema
**scarf** mafla
**scatter** tawanyika
**school** shule; skuli
**science** sayansi
**scientific** ya kisayansi
**scientist** mwana sayansi
**scissors** mkasi
**score** *verb* kufunga goli; **What's the score?** Mangapi kwa mangapi?; **Who scored?** Nani katia goli?
**Scot** Mscotland
**Scotland** Scotland
**Scottish** *adjective* ya Kiscotland
**screw** msumari
**screwdriver** bisibisi
**scuba-diving** kupiga mbizi kwa skuba
**scythe** fyekeo
**sea** bahari
**search** kutafuta
**seasick: I am seasick.** Nina kichefuchefu cha bahari.
**season** msimu
**seat** kiti; *political* kiti cha jimbo
**sea urchin** uyumba; mashanuo
**second** *adjective* ya pili; *noun* sekundi
**secondhand** ilokwisha tumiwa
**secret** *adjective* siri; *noun* siri
**secret police** askari kanzu
**section** upande
**security** usalama
**see** kuona
**seed** mbegu
**seek** kutafuta
**seize** kukamata
**sell** kuuza
**send** kupeleka
**senior** mkubwa
**sense** *meaning* maana; **common sense** akili
**September** Septemba
**septic** kuoza
**series: radio/TV series** hadithi ya kuendelea
**serious** kweli
**service** huduma
**session** kikao
**seven** saba
**seventeen** kumi na saba
**seventy** sabiini
**several** baadhi
**severe** kali; **severe heat** joto kali
**sew** kushona
**sewing machine** cherahani
**sex** kuingiliano ya kimwili; *gender* jinsia
**shade** kivuli
**shake** kutikisa
**shampoo** dawa ya kukoshea nywele
**shape** umbo
**share** *noun* fungu; *verb* kugawa
**sharp** kali
**shaving cream** kremu ya kunyolea ndevu
**she** yeye
**sheep** kondoo

**sheepdog** mbwa anayelinda kondoo
**sheet** bedshiti
**shell** *military* kombora; *sea* kaure
**shelter** kipaa
**shepherd** mchunga kondoo
**shine** kung'ara
**ship** meli
**shirt** shati
**shock** *medical* shoki; **electric shock** shoki ya umeme
**shoe** kiatu
**shoes** viatu
**shoeshop** duka la viatu
**shoot** kupiga risasi; **Don't shoot!** Usipige risasi!
**shop** duka
**shopkeeper** mwenye duka
**shopping** kwenda dukani
**shore** pwani
**short** fupi
**shortage** upungufu
**shoulder** bega
**shout** kupiga kelele
**shovel** pauro
**show** *noun* maonyesho; *verb* kuonyesha
**shower** mfereji wa mvua; shawa
**shut** *verb* kufunga
**sick: to be sick** kuumwa; **I am sick.** Ninaumwa.
**sight** ona
**sign** *noun* ishara
**signature** sahihi
**sign** *verb* kutia sahihi
**significance** maana
**significant** enye maana
**sign language** lugha ya mabubu na viziwi
**silence** kimya
**silent** kimya
**silk** hariri
**silly** pumbavu
**silver** fedha
**similar: to be similar** kufanana
**since** tokea
**sing** kuimba
**single** moja pekee; **single room** chumba cha mtu mmoja
**sink** *noun* karo; *verb* kuzama
**sister** dada
**sit** kukaa
**situation** hali
**six** sita
**sixteen** kumi na sita
**sixth** ya sita
**sixty** sitini
**size** kipimo
**ski slope** mteremko wa ski
**skiing** mchezo wa ski
**skill** ufundi
**skilled** yenye ufundi
**skin** ngozi
**sky** mbingu
**sleep** *verb* kulala
**sleeping bag** mfuko wa kulalia
**sleeping car** gari ya kulala
**sleeping pill(s)** kidonge cha usingizi
**sleepy: I am sleepy.** Naona usingizi.
**sleet** mtelezo
**sling** *medical* kitanzi ya hospitali
**slip** kuteleza
**slope** mteleza
**slow** taratibu
**slowly** kwa utaratibu
**small** ndogo
**smaller** ndogo sana
**smell** *noun* harufu
**smoke** *noun* moshi; *verb* kuvuta sigara
**smoking** kuvuta sigara
**smuggler** mfanya magendo
**snack** kitafunio
**snail** konokono

**snake** nyoka
**snakebite** mtafuno wa nyoka
**snow** theluji; **It is snowing.** Theluji inaporomoka.
**so much/many** nyingi sana
**soap** sabuni
**soccer** mpira wa miguu; futboli
**soccer match** mchezo wa mpira
**social** ya jamii
**society** jamii
**sock** soksi
**soft** laini
**soldier** askari wa jeshi
**solve** kutatua
**some** baadhi
**somehow** kwa namna fulani
**someone/somebody** mtu fulani
**something** kitu fulani
**sometimes** mara nyengine
**somewhere** pahala pengine
**son** mtoto wa kiume
**song** nyimbo
**soon** karibu
**sore throat** maumivu ya koo
**sorry!** *familiar* samahani!; *formal* nisamehe!; **I'm sorry.** Naomba msamaha.
**soul** roho
**sound** sauti
**sound equipment** chombo cha sauti
**soup** supu
**sour** chungu
**source** rojo
**south** *noun* kusini
**south(ern)** ya kusini
**souvenir** ukumbusho
**sow** *verb* kupanda
**space** nafasi
**spade** pauro
**Spaniard** Mspanish
**Spanish** *thing* ya Kispanish; *language* Kispanish
**spanner** spana
**spare tire** mpira wa spea
**sparkle** kumeremeta
**speak** kusema; **Do you speak English?** Unasema Kingereza?; **I speak...** Ninasema...
**speaker** msemaji
**specialist** mtaalamu
**speed** spidi
**spell: How do you spell it?** Vipi unatamka hii?
**spend** kutumia
**spicy** *hot* yenye pilipili
**spider** buibui
**spill** kumwaga
**spin** kuzungusha
**spine** *back* ute wa mgongo
**spit** kutema mate
**splint** *medical* banzi; piopi
**split** kupasuka
**spoil** kuharibu
**sponge** spanji
**spoon** kijiko
**sports** riadha
**sportsman** mwana wa riadha
**spread** kutawanya
**spring** *season* vuli; *of water* chemchem; *metal* springi
**spy** jasusi
**square** skwaya; **town square** mjini
**stadium** stadium
**staff** wafanyakazi
**stage** steji
**stale** ilochacha
**stallion** farasi dume
**stamp** *postal* stempu; *official* mhuri
**stand** kusimama
**star** nyota
**state** *nation* nchi; *federal* jimbo; *condition* hali
**station** kituo

**stationer's** duka la vifaa vya ofisini
**stationery** vifaa vya ofisini
**statue** sanamu
**stay** kukaa
**steak** steki
**steal** kuiba; **My wallet has been stolen.** Nimeibiwa kipochi changu.
**steel** chuma
**steering wheel** usukani
**sterling** pauni
**stethoscope** stetoskopi
**stick** *noun* fimbo; *verb* kugandisha
**still** *adverb* bado
**sting** *verb* kuchoma
**stink** *verb* kunuka
**stitches** *surgical* stichi
**stolen** imeibiwa; **My car has been stolen.** Gari yangu imeibiwa.
**stomach** tumbo
**stomachache** maumivu ya tumbo
**stone** jiwe
**stop** kusimama; **don't stop!** usisimame!
**store** *for storage* ghala; *shop* duka
**storm** dhoruba
**story** hadithi; *floor* ghorofa
**stove** jiko
**straight** ilionyoka; **straight on** moja kwa moja; **Go straight ahead.** Nenda moja kwa moja.
**strange** geni
**stranger** mgeni
**strawberry** sitoberi
**stream** mto
**street** mtaa
**strength** nguvu
**stretcher** machera
**strike** *noun (from work)* mgomo; *verb* kupiga; *from work* kugoma
**string** nyuzi
**strong** nguvu
**structure** muundo
**struggle** shindano
**stuck: Our car is stuck.** Gari yetu imekwama.
**student** mwanafunzi
**study** *noun* masomo; *verb* kusoma
**subject** mazungumzo
**suburb** viunga
**subway** *metro* njia ya chini kwa chini
**success** faulu
**such** hivyo
**suddenly** ghafula
**sufficient: to be sufficient** kutosha
**sugar** sukari
**suit** *noun* suti
**suitable** inayofaa
**suitcase** begi
**sultan** mfalme
**summer** majira ya joto
**summit** kilele
**sun** juwa
**sunbathe** kuota jua
**sunblock** krimu ya kuhifadhi ngozi
**sunburn** mbabuko
**Sunday** Jumapili
**sunglasses** miwani za juwa
**sunny: It is sunny.** Kuna juwa.
**sunrise** alfajiri
**sunset** magharibi
**supermarket** supamaket
**supper** chakula cha usiku
**supplies** vifaa
**supply** *verb* kutoa
**sure** *adjective* hakika; *adverb* kwa hakika
**surf** *verb* kuteleza mawimbi
**surfboard** safbod
**surgeon** daktari wa operesheni

**surgery** *operation* operesheni
**surname** jina la babu
**surprising: to be surprising** kushangaza
**survey** *noun* kagua; *verb* kukagua
**surveyor** mkaguzi
**swallow** *verb* kumeza
**swamp** kinamasi
**swear** *oath* kula kiapo; *curse* kutukana
**sweat** jasho
**sweater** sweta
**sweep** kufagia
**sweet** tamu
**swell** kuvimba
**swim** kuogolea
**swimming** kuogolea
**swimming pool** bwawa
**swimsuit** nguo ya kukogea pwani
**swing** *noun* pembea
**switch** *electric* swichi
**switch off** kuzima
**switch on** kuwasha
**syce** saisi
**symbol** alama
**symptom** dalili ya magonjwa
**synagogue** kanisa la Mayahudi
**syntax** sintaksi
**syringe** shindano ya kudunga
**system** mfumo

# T

**table** meza
**tablecloth** kitambaa cha meza
**tablet** kidonge cha kumeza
**take** kuchukuwa
**take-away food** chakula cha kununua
**take off** *something* kuondoa; **What time does the plane take off?** Ndege inaondoka saa ngapi?
**take-out food** chakula cha kununua
**talk** kuzungumza
**tall** mrefu
**tampon** sodo
**tank** tangi; *petrol* tangi la petroli; *military* kifaru; *faucet* mfereji
**tape** tepu; *cassette* kanda
**tape recorder** tepu-rikoda
**taste** *noun* ladha; *verb* kuonja
**tasteless** haina ladha
**tasty** ina ladha
**tax** *noun* ushuru/kodi; *verb* kukodi
**tax-free** bila ya ushuru
**taxi** teksi
**tea** chai; **tea with lemon** chai na limau; **tea with milk** chai ya maziwa
**teach** kusomesha
**teacher** mwalimu
**team** timu
**tear** *noun* chozi
**tear** *verb* kuchana
**teaspoon** kijiko cha chai
**technical** ya ufundi
**technique** ustadi
**teeth** meno
**telecommunications** mawasiliano
**telegram** telegram
**telephone** *noun* simu; **satellite phone** simu ya satelait; *verb* kupiga simu
**telescope** darubini
**television** televisheni
**telex** teleks
**tell** kusema
**temperature: The temperature is high.** Joto.; **The temperature is low.** Hamna joto.; **I have a temperature.** Nina homa.

**temple** kanisa la mabaniani
**ten** kumi
**tennis** tennis
**tent** hema
**tenth** ya kumi
**termite** mchwa
**terrible** mbaya
**territory** eneo
**test** *noun* jaribio
**text** maandishi
**than** kuliko
**thank** kushukuru
**thank you!** asante!; ahsante!
**that** ile
**that's enough!** inatosha!
**theater** thiata
**theft** uwizi
**their; theirs** wao
**them** -wa-
**themselves** wao wenyewe
**then** halafu
**theory** nadharia
**there** kule
**therefore** baadala
**thermometer** thamomita
**these** hizi
**they** wao
**thick** *wide* pana; **thick forest** msitu nyika
**thief** mwizi
**thin** nyembamba
**thing** kitu
**things** vitu
**think** kufikiri; **I think that...** Nafikiri...
**third** ya tatu; **one-third** theluthi
**thirsty** kiu; **I'm thirsty.** Nina kiu.
**thirteen** kumi na tatu
**thirty** thelathini
**this** hii
**those** zile
**thought** fikra
**thousand** elfu
**thread** uzi; **Do you have needle and thread?** Una uzi na shindano?
**three** tatu
**three times** mara tatu
**throat** koo
**thrombosis** thrombosis
**throne** kiti cha enzi
**through** kupita
**throw** kurusha
**thumb** kidole gumba
**thunder** radi
**thunderstorm** radi
**Thursday** Alhamisi
**tick** *insect* kupe
**ticket** tikti; **one-way ticket** tikti ya kwenda; **return ticket** tikti ya kwenda na kurudi
**ticket office** ofisi ya tikti
**tie** *necktie* tai; *verb* kufunga
**ties** uhusiano; **diplomatic ties** uhusiano wa madola
**tights** tait
**time** wakati; **two times** mara mbili; **for a long time** wakati mrefu; **free time** wakati; **What time is it?** Saa ngapi?
**timetable** ratiba
**timetable for travel** ratiba ya safari
**tire** *noun* mpira wa gari; taire; *verb* kuchoka
**tired** machofu
**tissues** tishu
**toast** *bread* tosti
**tobacco** tumbaku
**today** leo
**toe** kidole (cha mguu)
**together** pamoja
**toilet** choo; msalani
**toilets** vyoo
**toilet paper** karatasi ya chooni
**toiletries** urembo wa mwili
**tomato** tungule; nyanya

**tomb** kaburi
**tomorrow** kesho; **the day after tomorrow** kesho kutwa
**tongue** ulimi
**tonight** leo usiku
**too** sana; **too little** kidogo sana; **too many/much** nyingi sana
**tools** vifaa
**tooth** jino
**toothache** maumivu ya jino
**toothbrush** mswaki
**toothpaste** dawa ya mswaki
**toothpick** kijiti cha kuchokolea meno
**top** juu
**torture** *noun* adhabu; *verb* kuadhibu
**tourism** utalii
**tourist** mtalii
**tourist office** ofisi ya utalii
**tow: Can you tow us?** Unaweza kutuvuta?
**tow rope** kamba ya kuvutia
**towel** taula
**tower** mnara
**town** mji
**town center** mjini
**town hall** halmashauri ya jiji
**track** njia
**tractor** trekta
**trade union** chama cha wafanyakazi
**tradition** desturi
**traditional** ya desturi
**traffic lights** trafik lait
**traffic police** askari wa trafik
**train** treni
**train station** kituo cha treni
**tranquilizer** dawa ya kutuliza
**transfer flights** kubadilisha ndege
**transformer** transfoma
**transfusion: blood transfusion** kutia damu
**translate** kutafsiri
**translation** tafsiri
**translator** mkalimani
**transmit** kurusha
**transmitter** transmita
**transport** usafiri
**trap** mtego
**trash** taka
**trauma** kiwewe
**travel** *noun* safari; *verb* kusafiri
**travel agency** ofisi ya usafiri
**traveler** msafiri
**traveler's checks** cheki za msafiri
**treacherous** danganyifu
**treasury** hazina
**tree** mti
**trees** miti
**trial** *legal* kesi; *test* majaribu
**troops** jeshi
**trouble** matatizo
**trouble: What's the trouble?** Kuna matatizo gani?
**trousers** suruwali
**truce** kusimamisha vita
**truck** pik-ap
**true** kweli
**trunk** *of car* buti
**truth** ukweli
**try** kujaribu
**tube** tubu
**Tuesday** Jumanne
**tunnel** handaki
**Turk** Mturuki
**Turkey** Turuki
**turkey** bata mzinga
**Turkish** *thing* ya Kituruki; *language* Kituruki
**turn** kupinda; **turn left!** pinda kushoto!; **turn right!** pinda kulia!
**twelve** kumi na mbili
**twenty** ishirini
**twice** mara mbili

**twins** mapacha
**two** mbili
**type** *noun* aina
**typewriter** mashine ya teipreita
**tyre** *noun* mpira; taire

# U

**ulcer** vidonda
**umbrella** muavuli
**uncle** mjomba
**uncomfortable** bila ya raha
**under** *preposition* chini ya; *adverb* chini
**underground** chini ya ardhi
**underpass** njia ya chini kwa chini
**understand** kufahamu; **Do you understand?** Umefahamu?; **I understand.** Nimefahamu.; **I don't understand.** Sifahamu.
**undertake** kukubali kufanya
**underwear** nguo za ndani
**undo** kutangua
**unemployed** bila ya kazi
**unemployment** ukosefu wa kazi
**unexploded bomb** bomu lisoripuka
**unfortunate** bahati mbaya
**unfortunately** kwa bahati mbaya
**unhappy** majonzi
**unification** kuunganisha
**uniform** sare
**union** umoja; **trade union** chama wa wafanya kazi
**unique** pekee
**United Nations** Umoja wa Mataifa
**United States of America** Muungano wa Nchi za Amerika; Marekani
**university** chuo kikuu
**unknown** isiojulikana
**unless** isipokuwa
**until** mpaka
**up** juu
**U.S.A.** Marekani
**use** kutumia
**useful** inotumika
**usual** kawaida
**usually** kwa kawaida

# V

**vacation** likizo
**vaccinate** kuchanja; **I have been vaccinated.** Nimechanjwa.
**vaccination** chanja
**valley** bonde
**van** gari la mizigo
**variety** jamii
**varnish** vanishi
**vase** jagi
**vegetable shop** duka la mboga
**vegetables** mboga
**vegetarian** mwenye kutokula nyama; **I am a vegetarian.** Sili nyama.
**vein** mshipa
**venereal disease** magonjwa ya sehemu za siri
**verb** kitenzi
**very** kweli; sana
**veto** kura ya kukataza
**vice-president** chini wa raisi
**victim** aliyojeruhiwa; **victim of war** mhanga wa vita
**victims** majeruhi
**victory** ushindi
**video cassette** video cassette; kanda ya video
**video player** video player
**view** mtazamo; mandhari

**village** kijiji
**vinegar** siki
**violence** vurugu
**virus** virusi
**visa** viza
**visit** *verb* kuzuru
**visitor** mgeni
**voice** sauti
**vomit** kutapika; **I have been vomiting.** Ninatapika.
**vote** *noun* kura; *verb* kutia kura; kupiga kura

# W

**wage war** kufanya vita
**wait** kungojea
**wait for** kusubiri
**waiter; waitress** mhuduma
**wake** kuamka; **Please wake me up at...** Niamshe saa...
**wake-up call** kengele ya kuamsha
**Wales** Wales
**wall** ukuta; kiambaza
**wallet** pochi
**want** kutaka; **What do you want?** Unataka?; **I want...** Ninataka...; **I don't want...** Sitaki...
**war** vita; **civil war** vita vya wenyewe kwa wenyewe
**warden: game park warden** bwana nyama
**warm** ujotojoto
**wash** *clothes* kufua; *things* kukosha; *body* kukoga
**washing powder** sabuni ya kufulia
**wasp** nyigu
**watch** *noun* saa; *verb* kutazama
**watchmaker's** fundi wa saa
**water** maji; **Is there drinking water?** Kuna maji ya kunywa?
**water bottle** maji ya chupa
**waterfall** mteremko wa maji
**watermelon** tikiti
**wave** *noun* wimbi
**way** njia; **this way** njia hii; **that way** njia ile
**we** sisi
**weak** dhaifu
**weapon** silaha
**wear** kuvaa
**weasel** cheche
**weather** hali ya hewa
**Wednesday** Jumatano
**week** wiki; **last week** wiki iliyopita; **next week** wiki ijayo; **this week** wiki hii
**weekend** wiki-end
**weep** kulia
**weight** uzito
**welcome!** karibu!
**well** *adjective* mzima; *adverb* vizuri; *noun* kisima; **oil well** kisima cha mafuta; **gas well** kisima cha gesi
**well-known** maarufu
**Welsh** *person* Muwelsh; *thing* ya Kiwelsh
**west** *noun* magharibi
**west(ern)** magharibi
**wet** *adjective* imaji
**what?** nini?; **what kind?** ikoje?; **what's that?** nini kile?
**wheat** ngano
**wheel** gurudumu
**wheelchair** kiti cha magurudumu
**when?** lini?
**where?** wapi?; **where from?** kutoka wapi?; **where is?** iko wapi?; **where are?** ziko wapi?
**which?** ipi?
**while** muda
**whiskey** wiski
**white** nyeupe

**who?** nani?
**whole** nzima
**why?** kwa nini?
**wide** pana
**wife** mke
**win** kufaulu; kushinda; **Who won?** Nani kashinda?
**wind** *noun* upepo
**wind** *verb* kusokota
**window** dirisha
**windshield** kioo cha dirisha cha gari
**windsurf** *verb* kupanda chelezo cha tanga
**windy** upepo
**wine** mvinyo
**wing** bawa
**winter** majira ya baridi
**wire** waya; **barbed wire** sinyenge
**wisdom** busara
**wish** *see* **want**
**with** na
**withdraw** kurudi
**without** bila ya
**witness** shahidi
**wolf** mbwa mwitu
**woman** mwanamke
**womb** fuko la uzazi
**wood** *forest* mwitu; *substance* mbao
**wool** sufi
**work** *noun* kazi; *verb* fanya kazi; **I work in a bank.** Nafanya kazi benki.; **The phone doesn't work.** Simu haifanyi kazi.
**worker** mfanyakazi
**world** dunia
**worm** mnyoo
**worried: to be worried** kuwa na wasiwasi
**worse** mbaya sana; **I feel worse.** Najisikia vibaya sana.
**worth** thamani
**wound** *noun* jaraha; *verb* kujeruhi
**wrap** kufunga; **Would you like it wrapped?** Utapenda ifungwe?
**wrench** spana
**wrestling** miereka
**wrist** kiganja
**write** kuandika
**writer** mwandishi
**writing** kuandika
**writing paper** karatasi ya kuandikia
**wrong: That is wrong.** Sio sawa.; **You're wrong!** Umekosea!

# X

**X-rays** x-ray

# Y

**yard** *courtyard* ua; *garden* bustani; *distance* masafa
**year** mwaka; **last year** mwaka jana; **this year** mwaka huu; **next year** mwaka ujao
**yellow** manjano
**yes** ndio
**yesterday** jana
**yesterday: the day before yesterday** juzi
**yet** bado; **not yet** bado kidogo
**yield** *noun* mazao; *verb* kukubali
**yogurt** mtindi
**you** *singular* wewe; *plural* nyie; *plural* ninyi
**young** kijana

**young person** kijana
**your; yours** *singular* yako; *plural* yenu
**yourself** wewe mwenyewe
**yourselves** nyie wenyewe; ninyi wenyewe
**youth** ujana

# Z

**zero** ziro; sufuri
**zip** zipu
**zombie** dubwana
**zoo** zu

# SWAHILI
# Phrasebook

# 1. ETIQUETTE

Greetings are given greater prominence in Swahili than English, and there is a wide variety not only of greeting formulas — varying according to time and occasion — but also set responses to them. Here are some of the common exchanges you'll encounter:

| | |
|---|---|
| Hello! / How are you? | **Habari!** |
| *—the general response is:* | **Nzuri!** |
| *or, said by one person:* | **Sijambo!** |
| *or, said by more than one:* | **Hujambo!** |
| *A more formal coastal greeting is:* | **Asalaam alaikum!** |
| *—to which the response is:* | **Alaikum salaam!** |
| Fine, thank you! | **Nzuri, asante!** |
| Good morning! | **Habari za* asubuhi!** |
| Good afternoon! | **Habari za* mchana!** |
| *A coastal version is:* | **Habari za* lasiri** |
| Good evening! | **Habari za* jioni!** |
| *Response to the above is:* | **Nzuri!** |
| Good night! | **Lala salama!** |
| | *or:* **Lala unono!** |
| See you later! | **Tutaonana!** |
| See you tomorrow! | **Tutaonana kesho!** |
| Goodbye! *to one person:* | **Kwaheri!** |
| *to more than one person:* | **Kwaherini!** |
| Bon voyage! | **Nenda salama!** |
| | *or:* **Safari njema!** |
| Welcome! *to one person:* | **Karibu!** |
| *to more than one person:* | **Karibuni!** |
| Please! | **Tafadhali!** |
| Thank you | **Asante!; Ahsante!** |
| Excuse me!/Sorry! | **Samahani!** |

* Or **... ya ...**

# 2. QUICK REFERENCE

| | |
|---|---|
| I | **mimi** |
| you *singular* | **wewe** |
| he/she/it | **yeye** |
| we | **sisi** |
| you *plural* | **ninyi; nyie** |
| they | **wao** |
| | |
| this | **hii** |
| that | **ile** |
| these | **hizi** |
| those | **zile** |
| here | **hapa** |
| there | **kule** |
| | |
| where? | **wapi?** |
| who? | **nani?** |
| what? | **nini?** |
| when? | **lini?** |
| which? | **ipi?** |
| how? | **vipi?** |
| why? | **kwa nini?** |
| how far? | **mbali?** |
| how near? | **karibu?** |
| how much *(price)*? | **bei gani?** |
| how many? | **ngapi?** |
| what's that? | **hichi nini?** |
| is there?/are there? | **zipo?** |
| where is/are? | **wapi?** |
| what must I do? | **nifanyeje?** |
| what do you want? | **unataka nini?** |
| | |
| very | **sana** |
| and | **na** |
| or | **au** |
| but | **lakini** |

| | |
|---|---|
| I like ... | **Ninapenda ...** |
| I don't like ... | **Sipendi ...** |
| I should like ... | **Nitapenda ...** |
| | |
| I want ... | **Ninataka ...** |
| I don't want ... | **Sitaki ...** |
| I know. | **Ninajua.** |
| I don't know. | **Sijui.** |
| Do you understand? | **Umefahamu?** |
| I understand. | **Nimefahamu.** |
| I don't understand. | **Sifahamu.** |
| | |
| I am sorry (to hear that). | **Pole.** |
| I am grateful. | **Asante.** |
| It's important. | **Ni muhimu.** |
| It doesn't matter. | **Usijali.** |
| No problem! | **Hakuna matata!** |
| more or less | **hivyo hivyo** |
| here is .../here are ... | **yuko ...** |
| Is everything OK? | **Kuna nini?** |
| Danger! | **Hatari!** |
| | |
| How do you spell that? | **Vipi unatamka hivo?** |
| | |
| I am ... cold | **Ninasikia baridi.** |
| hot | **Ninasikia joto.** |
| sleepy | **Nina usingizi.** |
| hungry | **Nina njaa.** |
| thirsty | **Nina kiu.** |
| angry | **Nimehamaki.** |
| happy | **Nina furaha.** |
| sad | **Nina majonzi.** |
| tired | **Nimechoka.** |
| well | **Mimi mzima.** |

# 3. INTRODUCTIONS

| | |
|---|---|
| What is your name? | **Jina lako nani?** |
| My name is ... | **Jina langu ...** |
| May I introduce you to ... | **Naomba kukujulisha na ...** |
| This is my ... | **Huyu ni ...** |
| friend | **rafiki yangu** |
| colleague/companion | **mwenzangu** |
| relative | **jamaa yangu** |

**TITLES:** Mr., Mrs., Ms., and Miss are best translated as follows:
Mr. — **Bwana** + first name, e.g. **Bwana Fred**
Miss/Ms./Mrs. — **Bibi** + first name, e.g. **Bibi Emma**

## Nationality

| | |
|---|---|
| Where are you from? | **Unatoka nchi gani?** |
| I am from ... | **Ninatoka ...** |
| America | **Marekani** |
| Australia | **Australia** |
| Britain | **Uingereza** |
| Canada | **Canada** |
| China | **Uchina** |
| England | **Uingereza** |
| Germany | **Ujerumani** |
| Ireland | **Ireland** |
| New Zealand | **New Zealand** |
| Wales | **Wales** |
| Scotland | **Scotland** |
| the USA | **Marekani** |
| Europe | **Ulaya** |
| India | **India** |
| Pakistan | **Pakistani** |
| Iran | **Irani** |
| Japan | **Japani** |

| | |
|---|---|
| I am ... | **Mimi ni ...** |
| American | **Mmarekani** |
| Australian | **Mwaustralian** |
| British | **Mwingereza** |
| Canadian | **Mkanadian** |
| Dutch | **Mdutch** |
| English | **Mwingereza** |
| French | **Mfaransa** |
| German | **Mjerumani** |
| Indian | **Mhindi** |
| Iranian | **Mwiranian** |
| Irish | **Mwirish** |
| Israeli | **Mwisraili** |
| Italian | **Mtaliana** |
| Pakistani | **Mpakistani** |
| Portuguese | **Mreno** |
| Spanish | **Mspanish** |
| Welsh | **Mwelsh** |
| Scottish | **Mskotish** |

**LANGUAGE TIP** — Replace **m-** with **wa-** to make the plural for people, e.g. **Mmarekani** 'an American', **Wamarekani** 'Americans'.

| | |
|---|---|
| Where were you born? | **Umezaliwa wapi?** |
| I was born in ... | **Nimezaliwa ...** |

## Eastern African nationalities

| | |
|---|---|
| Tanzania | **Tanzania** |
| —Tanzanian *person* | **—Mtanzania** |
| Kenya | **Kenya** |
| —Kenyan *person* | **—Mkenya** |
| Uganda | **Uganda** |
| —Ugandan *person* | **—Mganda** |
| Zanzibar | **Zanzibar** |
| —Zanzibari *person* | **—Mzanzibari** |
| Burundi | **Burundi** |
| —Burundian *person* | **—Mburundi** |

| | |
|---|---|
| Comoros Islands | **Ngazija** |
| —Comorian *person* | **—Mngazija** |
| Congo | **Kongo** |
| —Congolese *person* | **—Mkongo** |
| Madagascar | **Bukini** |
| —Madagascan *person* | **—Mbuki** |
| Malawi | **Malawi** |
| —Malawian *person* | **—Mmalawi** |
| Mozambique | **Msumbiji** |
| —Mozambican *person* | **—Mmakua** |
| Rwanda | **Rwanda** |
| —Rwandan *person* | **—Mrwanda** |
| Somalia | **Somalia** |
| —Somali *person* | **—Msomali** |

## Occupations

| | |
|---|---|
| What do you do? | **Unafanya kazi gani?** |
| I am a/an ... | **Mimi ni ...** |
| academic | **mwana wa chuoni** |
| accountant | **mhasibu** |
| administrator | **karani** |
| aid worker | **msaidizi** |
| architect | **msanifu wa majengo** |
| artist | **msanii** |
| banker | **mwenye benki** |
| business person | **mfanya biashara** |
| carpenter | **seremalo** |
| civil servant | **mtumishi wa serikali** |
| consultant | **mshauri** |
| dentist | **daktari wa meno** |
| designer | **msanii** *or* **mchoraji** |
| diplomat | **mfanyakazi balozini** |
| doctor | **daktari** |
| economist | **mchumi** |
| engineer | **mhandisi** |
| factory worker | **mfanyakazi wa viwanda** |

| | |
|---|---|
| farmer | **mkulima** |
| film-maker | **mfanyaji filmu** |
| journalist | **mwandishi wa habari** |
| lawyer | **wakili** |
| mechanic | **fundi wa gari** |
| nurse | **muuguzi** |
| office worker | **mfanyakazi ofosini** |
| pilot | **mrusha ndege** |
| scientist | **mkemia** |
| secretary | **katibu** |
| soldier | **mwana wa jeshi** |
| student | **mwanafunzi** |
| surgeon | **daktari** |
| teacher | **mwalimu** |
| therapist | **mtaalamu wa matibabu** |
| tourist | **mtalii** |
| writer | **mwandishi** |

| | |
|---|---|
| I work in ... | **Ninafanya kazi ya ...** |
| advertising | **utangazaji** |
| computers | **kompyuta** |
| insurance | **bima** |
| I.T. | **kompyuta** |
| the leisure industry | **utalii** |
| marketing | **elimu ya soko** |
| an office | **ofisi** |
| the retail industry | **biashara ya rejareja** |
| sales | **kuuza** |
| a shop | **duka** |
| telecommunications | **mawasiliano** |
| tourism | **utalii** |
| the hotel industry | **biashara ya hoteli** |

## Age

| | |
|---|---|
| How old are you? | **Una miaka mingapi?** |
| I am ... years old. | **Mimi nina miaka ...** |

## Family

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Are you married? | *to a man:* | **Umeoa?** |
| | *to a woman:* | **Umeolewa?** |
| Do you have a boyfriend? | | **Unaye mchumba?** |
| Do you have a girlfriend? | | **Unaye mchumba?** |
| What is his/her name? | | **Jina lake ni nani?** |

### What you are & who you know . . .

**MARITAL STATUS** — The male/female relationship is a strictly fixed one in Swahili. In saying 'I am married', a man therefore says **nimeoa** (literally 'I have married [a woman]') while a woman says **nimeolewa** ('I have been married [by a man]'.) Similarly, for 'I am divorced', a man says **nimemwacha** ('I have divorced'), a woman says **nimeachwa** ('I have been divorced'). 'I am single' involves a definition of whether one has never married, is divorced, or is widowed — best therefore to say instead: **sijaoa** (male: 'I'm not married'), or **sijaolewa** (female: 'I haven't been married'). 'I am engaged' is **nimeposa** (male: 'I have engaged'), or **nimeposwa** (female: 'I have been engaged'). **Mjane** can refer to either sex, and means someone who is unmarried as a result of a previous divorce.

**FRIENDS** — In traditional Swahili, there are many words to cover the words for 'friend'. **Rafiki** means a friend in general for either sex, while **mchumba** is a romantic boyfriend or girlfriend.

| | |
|---|---|
| How many children do you have? | **Una watoto wangapi?** |
| I don't have any children. | **Sina watoto.** |
| I have a daughter. | **Ninaye mtoto mwanamke.** |
| I have a son. | **Ninaye mtoto mwanamume.** |
| How many sisters do you have? | **Una ndugu wa kike wangapi?** |
| How many brothers do you have? | **Una ndugu wa kiume wangapi?** |
| father | **baba** |
| mother | **mama** |

| | |
|---|---|
| grandfather | **babu** |
| grandmother | **bibi** |
| brother | **ndugu (wanamume)** |
| *elder brother:* | **kaka** |
| brother | **ndugu (wanamke)** |
| *elder brother:* | **dada** |
| children | **watoto** |
| daughter/girl | **mtoto (wanamke); msichana** |
| son/boy | **mtoto (wanamume); mvulana** |
| twins | **mapacha** |
| husband | **mume** |
| wife | **mke** |
| family | **ukoo** |
| man | **bwana** |
| woman | **bibi** |
| person | **mtu** |
| people | **watu** |

## Religion

East Africa represents a mix of the major religions: along the coast one tends to find Sunni Muslims, while the further inland you go the greater the number of Christians of all denominations. In more remote areas, many people still cling to older, traditional beliefs. (For more, see the note on 'Religious Heritage on the Coast' on page 150.)

| | |
|---|---|
| I am (a) ... | **Mimi ni ...** |
| Muslim | **Mwislamu** |
| Buddhist | **Budist** |
| Christian | **Mkiristo** |
| Catholic | **Mkatoliki** |
| Hindu | **Baniani** |
| Jewish | **Myahudi** |
| I am not religious. | **Mimi sina dini.** |

# 4. LANGUAGE

Aside from other indigenous languages spoken in East Africa and the Indian Ocean countries, on the Swahili Coast almost everyone knows at least a few words of Arabic (this comes from both studying at Koranic school as well as trade and popular cultural influences). English is also widespread but this depends from area to area. In many places, particularly the larger ports and cities, people will also know a smattering of languages like Italian or Hindi. Some of the older generations on the Tanzanian mainland still know German. As you go into the mainland, Swahili will share space with local languages such as Chagga, Kikuyu, Luo, and Ganda.

| | |
|---|---|
| Do you speak English? | **Unasema Kingereza?** |
| Do you speak Hindi? | **Unasema Kihindi?** |
| Do you speak German? | **Unasema Kijerumani?** |
| Do you speak Italian? | **Unasema Kitaliani?** |
| Do you speak French? | **Unasema Kifaransa?** |
| Do you speak Catalán? | **Unasema Kikatalani?** |
| Do you speak Spanish? | **Unasema Kispanish** |
| Do you speak Farsi? | **Unasema Kifarsi?** |
| Do you speak Arabic? | **Unasema Kiarabu?** |
| Does anyone speak English? | **Kuna mtu yeyote anaye sema Kingereza?** |
| I speak a little ... | **Ninajua ... kidogo.** |
| I don't speak ... | **Sisjui ...** |
| I understand. | **Nimefahamu.** |
| I don't understand. | **Sifahamu.** |
| Please point to the word in the book. | **Tafadhali nioneshe neno katika kitabu.** |
| Please wait while I look up the word. | **Tafadhali subiri kidogo tizama neno hili.** |
| Could you speak more slowly, please? | **Tafadhali sema taratibu?** |

| | |
|---|---|
| Could you repeat that? | **Tafadhali sema tena?** |
| How do you say ... in Swahili? | **Vipi unasema neno ... kwa Kiswahili?** |
| What does ... mean? | **Neno hili ... lina maana gani?** |
| How do you pronounce this word? | **Vipi unatamka neno hili?** |
| I speak ... | **Ninasema ...** |
| Arabic | **Kiarabu** |
| Catalán | **Kikatalan** |
| Danish | **Kidenish** |
| Dutch | **Kidachi** |
| English | **Kingereza** |
| Farsi | **Kifarsi** |
| French | **Kifaransa** |
| Hindi | **Kihindi** |
| German | **Kijerumani** |
| Italian | **Kitaliana** |
| Japanese | **Kijapani** |
| Spanish | **Kispanish** |

**COLLOQUIAL LANGUAGE** – Aside from the forms of Swahili that vary from region to region, you will of course also encounter an endless range of words and phrases used in informal conversation or as rawer 'street language'. Some of the more common (and polite!) phrases you are likely to hear are:

| | |
|---|---|
| **aia!** | oh no! |
| **ehaa Bwana!** | hey Mr.! |
| **haiwezekani kabisa!** | no way! |
| **hakuna matata!** | no problem! |
| **hakuna matatizo!** | no problem! |
| **hakuna wasiwasi!** | no problem! |
| **je vipi!** | hey!; what's up? |
| **lahaula!** | oh no! |
| **nenda zako we!** | go away! |
| **wacha mzaha!** | you're joking! |

# 5. BUREAUCRACY

Note that many forms you encounter may be written in Swahili only.

| | |
|---|---|
| name | **jina** |
| surname | **jina la babu** |
| middle name | **jina la baba** |
| address | **anuani** |
| date of birth | **tarehe ya kuzaliwa** |
| place of birth | **pahala pa kuzaliwa** |
| nationality | **uraia** |
| age | **umri** |
| *sex:* male | **mwanamume** |
| female | **mwanamke** |
| religion | **dini** |
| reason for travel: | **sababu ya kusafiri:** |
| business | **biashara** |
| tourism | **utalii** |
| work | **kazi** |
| personal | **binafsi** |
| profession | **kikazi** |
| marital status? | *for men* **umeoa?** |
| | *for women* **umeolea?** |
| single | *—see box on page 103* |
| married | *male* **nimeoa** |
| | *female* **nimeolewa** |
| divorced | *—see box on page 103* |
| date | **tarehe** |
| date of arrival | **tarehe ya kuwasili** |
| date of departure | **tarehe ya kuondoka** |
| passport | **pasapoti** |
| passport number | **nambari ya pasapoti** |
| visa | **viza** |
| currency | **fedha; pesa** |

## Ministries

| | |
|---|---|
| Ministry of Defense | **Wizara ya Ulinzi** |
| Ministry of Agriculture | **Wizara ya Kilimo** |
| Ministry of Foreign Affairs | **Wizara ya Mashauri ya Nchi za Kigeni/Nje** |
| Ministry of Home Affairs | **Wizara ya Mashauri Nchini/Mambo Ndani** |
| Ministry of Tourism (and Wildlife) | **Wizara ya Utalii (na Wanyama wa Porini)** |
| Treasury; Ministry of Finance | **Wizara ya Fedha** |
| Ministry of Health | **Wizara ya Afya** |
| Ministry of Education | **Wizara ya Elimu** |
| Ministry of Commerce and Industry | **Wizara ya Biashara na Viwanda** |
| Ministry of Information and Broadcasting | **Wizara ya Habari na Utangazaji** |

| | |
|---|---|
| prime minister | **waziri mkuu** |
| minister | **waziri** |
| president | **rais** |
| government | **serikali** |
| parliament | **bunge** |

| | |
|---|---|
| What does this mean? | **Hii ina maana gani?** |
| Where is Mr./Ms. ...'s office? | **Ofisi ya Bwana/Bibi ... iko wapi?** |
| Which floor is it on? | **Ghorofa ya ngapi?** |
| Does the lift/elevator work? | **Hii lifti inafanya kazi?** |
| Is Mr./Ms. ... in? | **Jee Bwana/Bibi ... yupo?** |
| Please tell him/her that I am here. | **Tafadhali mjulishe kama nimefika niko hapa.** |
| I can't wait, I have an appointment. | **Siwezi kusubiri nina miadi.** |
| Tell him/her that I was here. | **Mwambie nilikuja.** |

# 6. TRAVEL

**Public transport** — Local travel is provided by the numerous privately run minibuses (called **daladala** in Tanzania and **matatu** in Kenya) which stop at predetermined pick-up points. Longer distance travel out of town offers you the usual variety of means. Buses are reliable and leave from specially designated areas and the very long distance operators offer mod cons like air-conditioning, toilets, and TV. Intercity buses usually wait to collect the greatest possible number of passengers. Travel by rail is slow and can be subject to long delays mid-journey. Note that public announcements, particularly for trains and planes, are made both in Swahili and English. There are now many car rental firms, offering you vehicles with or without drivers, and minibuses specially for tourist travel may also be hired (these always come with a driver). Rates vary. Bicycles and motorbikes for hire are not difficult to find.

| | |
|---|---|
| What time does the ... | **Saa ngapi ...** |
| airplane leave/arrive? | **ndege itaondoka/ itakuja?** |
| boat leave/arrive? | **mashua litaondoka/ litakuja?** |
| bus leave/arrive? | **basi litaondoka/ litakuja?** |
| train leave/arrive? | **treni itaondoka/ itakuja?** |
| minibus leave/arrive? | **daladala/matatu litaondoka/litakuja?** |

| | |
|---|---|
| The plane is delayed/cancelled. | **Ndege imechelewa.** |
| The train is delayed/cancelled. | **Treni imechelewa.** |
| How long will it be delayed? | **Kwa muda gani itachelewa?** |
| There is a delay of ... minutes. | **Itachelewa kwa dakika ...** |
| There is a delay of ... hours. | **Itachelewa kwa masaa ...** |

| | |
|---|---|
| Excuse me, where is the ticket office? | **Tafadhali ofisi ya tiket/tikti iko wapi?** |
| Where can I buy a ticket? | **Wapi ninaweza kununua tikti?** |
| I want to go to ... | **Ninataka kwenda ...** |
| I want a ticket to ... | **Ninataka tikti ya kwenda ...** |
| I would like ... | **Ninataka ...** |
| a one-way ticket | **tikti ya kwenda tu** |
| a return ticket | **tikti ya kwenda na kurudi** |

**LANGUAGE TIP** — When you need to ask for specialized services such as 'first class', 'second class' and 'business class', you can use the English term.

| | |
|---|---|
| Do I pay in shillings or in dollars? | **Nilipe kwa shilingi au kwa dollars?** |
| You must pay in shillings. | **Lazima ulipe kwa shilingi.** |
| You must pay in dollars. | **Lazima ulipe kwa dollars.** |
| You can pay in either. | **Unaweza kulipa kwa shilingi au dollars.** |
| Can I reserve a place? | **Ninaweza kurizavu?** |
| How long does the trip take? | **Safari ya muda gani?** |
| Is it a direct route? | **Ina kwenda moja kwa moja?** |

## By air

All of East Africa's international and national flights are non-smoking.

| | |
|---|---|
| Is there a flight to ... ? | **Kuna ndege ya kwenda ... ?** |
| When is the next flight to ... ? | **Ndege ya kwenda ... saa ngapi?** |

| | |
|---|---|
| How long is the flight? | **Safari ya muda gani?** |
| What is the flight number? | **Ndege nambari gani?** |
| You must check in at ... o'clock. | **Lazima ufike saa ...** |

| | |
|---|---|
| Is the flight delayed? | **Jee ndege imechelewa?** |
| How long is the flight delayed? | **Kwa muda gani ndege imechelewa?** |
| Is this the flight for ... ? | **Ndege hii inakwenda ... ?** |
| Is that the flight from ... ? | **Ndege hii imetoka ... ?** |
| When is the London flight arriving? | **Ndege ya kutoka London ishakuja?** |
| Is it on time? | **Haitochelewa?** |
| Is it late? | **Itachelewa?** |
| Do I have to change planes? | **Itanibidi kubadilisha ndege?** |
| Has the plane left Dubai yet? | **Ndege ishaondoka Dubai?** |
| What time does the plane take off? | **Saa ngapi ndege itaondoka?** |
| What time do we arrive in Dar-es-Salaam? | **Saa ngapi tutafika Dar-es-Salaam?** |
| I wish to confirm my flight. | **Ninataka kukonfam tikti yangu ya ndege.** |

| | |
|---|---|
| excess baggage | **mizigo imezidi** |
| international flight | **international flight** |
| national/internal flight | **internal flight** |

## By bus

Kenya and Tanzania have fast, reliable bus/coach systems that cover most areas. As well as to countries further west and south, main routes include Dar-es-Salaam–Dodoma, Arusha–Nairobi, and Nairobi–Mombasa. Overcrowding is commonplace so you should reserve your seat a day in advance. The larger operators have offices near the bus stations where they list their routes and prices. For the

shorter routes use the minibuses. In Kenya the minibus terminal will be called **steji** while in Tanzania it is **kituo** (you'll find taxis at the **stand**). If the minibus is crowded, you may pay the driver's assistant (conductor or ticket tout — **utingo** or **manamba**) when you get out. Note that baggage travels extra, but don't pay more than half-fare for it.

| | |
|---|---|
| bus stop/bus station | **kituo cha basi** |
| Where is the bus stop? | **Kiko wapi kituo cha basi?** |
| Take me to the bus station. | **Nipeleke kituo cha basi.** |
| Which bus goes to ... ? | **Basi gani linakwenda ... ?** |
| Does this bus go to ... ? | **Basi hili linakwenda ... ?** |
| How often do buses pass by? | **Basi linapita mara kwa mara?** |
| What time is the ... bus? | **Saa ngapi basi ... lakwenda?** |
| first | **la kwanza/mwanzo** |
| last | **la mwisho** |
| next | **jengine** |
| Will you let me know when we get to ... ? | **Tafadhali nijulishe tukifika ... ?** |
| Stop, I want to get off! | **Simama, nniataka kushuka!** |
| Where can I get a bus to ... ? | **Wapi nitapata basi la kwenda ... ?** |
| When is the first bus to ... ? | **Basi la mwanzo la kwenda ... saa ngapi?** |
| When is the last bus to ... ? | **Basi la mwisho la kwenda ... saa ngapi?** |
| When is the next bus to ... ? | **Basi lapili la kwenda ... saa ngapi?** |
| Do I have to change buses? | **Jee inabidi nibadilishe basi?** |

| | |
|---|---|
| I want to get off at ... | **Ninataka kushuka ...** |
| Please let me off at the next stop. | **Ninataka kushuka kituo cha pili.** |
| Please let me off here. | **Tafadhali ninataka kushuka hapa.** |
| How long is the journey? | **Safari ya muda gani?** |
| What is the fare? | **Bei gani tikti?** |
| I need my luggage, please. | **Ninataka mabegi yangu.** |
| That's my bag. | **Hilo ni begi langu** |

## By rail

Although not always the fastest way of getting around, travel by rail in East Africa can offer spectacular and frequently epic journeys. Classic routes include the Uhuru line that runs from Tanzania to Zambia through the highland area of southern Tanzania, Mikumi National Park, the Selous Game Reserve (the largest in Africa), and the Nairobi–Mombasa line. You will definitely have to make a reservation on these trains, particularly if you want to travel first-class. You can purchase tickets and make reservations (even weeks ahead) at the stations, or alternatively for a sometimes large supplement local travel agents will be willing to do this, and overseas agents can also do this for a bit more money still.

| | |
|---|---|
| Take me to the railway station. | **Nipeleke kwenye kituo cha treni.** |
| Passengers must ... | **Abiria lazima wa ...** |
| change trains | **badilisha treni** |
| change platforms | **badilisha upande wa kupandia treni.** |
| Is this the right platform for ... ? | **Upande gani treni inaondokea kwenda ...?** |
| The train leaves from this/that platform. | **Treni itaondoka kwa huu/ule upande.** |

| | |
|---|---|
| Is there a timetable? | **Iko orodha ya treni?** |
| Which platform should I go to? | **Upande gani nende?** |
| platform one/two | **upande na mbari moja/mbili** |
| You must change trains at ... | **Lazima ubadilishe ...** |
| Where can I buy tickets? | **Wapi pa kununua tikti?** |
| Will the train leave on time? | **Treni itaondoka saa ngapi?** |
| There will be a delay of ... minutes. | **Treni itachelewa kwa muda wa ... dakika.** |
| There will be a delay of ... hours. | **Treni itachelewa kwa masaa ...** |

## By taxi

You have a variety of choices. In the cities many taxis are clearly marked and operate according to fixed tariffs, while unmarked taxis and minibuses are more flexible. Whatever your choice, to avoid unpleasant surprises, agree to fares in advance and be prepared to pay extra for baggage. It is useful to be able to tell the driver your destination in Swahili (or have it written down on a piece of paper). Although standards vary from area to area, the direction-finding of taxi drivers is in general very reliable. Be warned that your taxi may make the odd unscheduled stop to pick up another fare or a friend, and be prepared to be stopped by police for overcrowding. You may therefore wish to hire the vehicle at a higher fare for your sole use. Hitching, with the usual cautions, is a common and acceptable alternative.

| | |
|---|---|
| Taxi! | **Teksi!** |
| Where can I get a taxi? | **Wapi ninaweza kupata teksi?** |
| Please could you get me a taxi. | **Tafadhali niitie teksi.** |

| | |
|---|---|
| Can you take me to ... ? | **Nipeleke ... ?** |
| How much will it cost to ... ? | **Bei gani kwenda ... ?** |
| To this address, please. | **Nipeleke mtaa huu.** |
| Turn left. | **Pinda kushoto.** |
| Turn right. | **Pinda kulia.** |
| Go straight ahead. | **Nenda moja kwa moja.** |
| Stop! | **Simama!** |
| Don't stop! | **Usisimame!** |
| I'm in a hurry. | **Nina haraka.** |
| Please drive more slowly! | **Endesha pole pole.** |
| Here is fine, thank you. | **Hapa panatosha asante.** |
| The next corner, please. | **Pinda corner ya pili.** |
| The next street to the left. | **Mtaa wapili pinda kushoto.** |
| The next street to the right. | **Mtaa wapili pinda kulia.** |
| Stop here! | **Simama hapa!** |
| Stop the car, I want to get out. | **Simamisha gari, ninataka kushuka.** |
| Please wait for me here. | **Nisubiri hapa.** |
| Take me to the airport. | **Nipeleke airport.** |

## General phrases

| | |
|---|---|
| I want to get off at ... | **Ninataka kushuka ...** |
| Excuse me! | **Samahani!** |
| Excuse me, may I get by? | **Samahani, ninataka kupita!** |
| These are my bags. | **Haya ni mabegi yangu.** |
| Please put them there. | **Tafadhali yaweke hapa.** |
| Is this seat free? | **Hichi kiti kina mtu?** |

| | |
|---|---|
| I think that's my seat. | **Ninafikiri hichi ni kiti changu.** |

## Useful words

| | |
|---|---|
| airport | **airport** |
| airport tax | **airport tax** |
| ambulance | **gari la wagonjwa** |
| arrivals | **ufikaji** |
| baggage counter | **sehemu ya mabegi** |
| bicycle | **baskeli** |
| boarding pass | **boarding pass** |
| boat | **mashua** |
| bus stop | **kituo cha basi** |
| camel | **ngamia** |
| car | **gari** |
| check-in counter | **sehemu ya kucheki** |
| closed | **imefungwa** |
| customs | **custom** |
| delay | **imechelewa** |
| departures | **pa kuondokea** |
| dining car | **mkahawa dani ya treni** |
| emergency exit | **mlango wa dharura** |
| entrance | **pa kuingilia** |
| exit | **pa kutokea** |
| express | **haraka** |
| ferry | **ferry** |
| 4-wheel drive | **4-wheel drive** |
| information | **taarifa** |
| ladies/gents toilets | **choo cha kiume/kike** |
| local | **mahali maalum** |
| helicopter | **helicopter** |
| horse | **farasi** |
| horse and cart | **gari la punda** |
| motorbike | **motorbike; motosekil** |
| no entry | **hapana ruhusa kupita** |

| | |
|---|---|
| no smoking | **hapana ruhusa kuvuta sigara** |
| open | **kuwazi** |
| platform | **upande wa kupandia treni** |
| pony | **farasi mdogo** |
| railway | **reli; gari la moshi** |
| reserved | **rizavu** |
| radio taxi | **teksi yenye simu** |
| road | **barabara** |
| sign | **alama** |
| sleeping car | **treni yenye sehemu ya kulala** |
| station | **kituo** |
| telephone | **simu** |
| ticket office | **ofisi ya tikti** |
| timetable | **orodha** |
| toilet(s) | **choo** |
| town center | **mjini** |
| train station | **kituo cha treni** |

## More on getting around...

**CYCLING** — You can easily find bicycles (both standard and mountain) in the larger city centers such as Nairobi, Arusha, Zanzibar or Dar-es-Salaam as well as some of the larger hotels. At the same time, you should be able to get details of any safe, established routes in the surrounding countryside.

**ON WATER** — On the great inland waterways, steamers, many of which are operated by the railway companies, run up and down Lake Victoria and the other lakes. Eastwards, on the Indian Ocean, ferries run regularly between Dar-es-Salaam and the island of Zanzibar. You have a choice of catamaran, hydrofoil, or hovercraft. There are less frequent services covering Pemba, Mafia, and other islands. A regular service connects the Lamu Archipelago, but there is not such good service between Mombasa and Zanzibar. Traditional dhows (**jahazi**) offer excellent opportunities for leisurely sightseeing or fishing trips.

# 7. ACCOMMODATION

Away from the major hotels and game park lodges, you will find that room service is not always available, and breakfast or other meals will have to be negotiated and paid for separately. Be prepared to find yourself in hotels that will not sell alcohol or will refuse to take couples they perceive as unmarried. Arrangements vary in the many hostels that are now springing up. An excellent option in more rural areas is to have your accommodation arranged at a private guesthouse, where traditional hospitality will guarantee that you are well looked after and well fed.

| | |
|---|---|
| I am looking for a ... | **Ninatafuta ....** |
| guesthouse | **guest house** |
| hotel | **hoteli** |
| hostel | **hostel** |
| Is there anywhere I can stay for the night? | **Kuna pahali popote ninaweza kulala kwa usiku huu?** |
| Is there anywhere we can stay for the night? | **Kuna pahali popote tunaweza kulala kwa usiku huu?** |
| Where is ... ? | **Wapi ... ?** |
| a cheap hotel | **hoteli ya rahisi** |
| a good hotel | **hoteli nzuri** |
| a nearby hotel | **hoteli iliyopo karibu** |
| a clean hotel | **hoteli ilokuwa safi** |
| What is the address? | **Mtaa gani?** |
| Could you write the address please? | **Tafadhali niandikie mtaa gani.** |

## At the hotel

| | |
|---|---|
| Do you have any rooms free? | **Unacho chumba?** |
| I would like ... | **Ninataka ...** |
| a single room | **chumba cha mtu mmoja** |
| a double room | **chumba cha watu wawili** |
| We'd like a room. | **Tunataka chumba.** |
| We'd like two rooms. | **Tunataka vyumba viwili.** |
| I want a room with ... | **Ninataka chumba chenye ...** |
| a bathroom | **bafu** |
| a shower | **shawa** |
| a television | **t.v.** |
| a window | **dirisha** |
| a double bed | **kitanda kikubwa** |
| a balcony | **varanda** |
| a view | **view** |
| I want a room that's quiet. | **Ninataka chumba kilokuwa kimya.** |
| How long will you be staying? | **Utakaa kwa muda gani?** |
| How many nights? | **Siku ngapi?** |
| I'm going to stay for ... | **Nitakaa kwa muda wa ...** |
| one day | **siku moja** |
| two days | **siku mbili** |
| one week | **wiki moja** |
| Do you have any I.D.? | **Unacho kitambulisho?** |
| Sorry, we're full. | **Samahani, hoteli imejaa.** |
| I have a reservation. | **Ninayo reservation.** |

| | |
|---|---|
| My name is ... | **Jina langu ...** |
| May I speak to the manager please? | **Ninaomba kumwona na maneja.** |
| I have to meet someone here. | **Nina miadi na mtu hapa.** |
| How much is it per night? | **Kiasi gani kwa siku?** |
| How much is it per person? | **Kiasi gani kwa mtu?** |
| How much is it per week? | **Kiasi gani kwa wiki?** |
| It's ... per day/per person. | **... kwa siku/kwa mtu.** |
| Can I see it? | **Ninaweza kukiona?** |
| Is there ... ? | **Iko ... ?** |
| airconditioning | **air-condition; a.c.** |
| a telephone | **simu** |
| a bar | **baa** |
| Is there ... ? | **Yako ... ?** |
| hot water | **maji ya moto** |
| laundry service | **dobi** |
| room service | **mahitajio ya chumba** |
| It's fine, I'll take it. | **Nitakichukuwa.** |
| No, I don't like it. | **Sijakipenda.** |
| It's too ... | **Kina ...** |
| cold | **baridi** |
| hot | **joto** |
| big | **kikubwa** |
| dark | **giza** |
| small | **kidogo** |
| noisy | **kelele** |
| dirty | **kichafu** |
| Are there any others? | **Kuna vyumba vengine?** |
| Where is the bathroom? | **Choo kiko wapi?** |
| Is there hot water all day? | **Maji ya moto yana patikana kutwa?** |

| | |
|---|---|
| Do you have a safe? | **Unalo 'safe'?** |
| Is there anywhere to wash clothes? | **Kuna pahala pa kufua nguo?** |
| Can I use the telephone? | **Ninaweza kutumia simu?** |

## Needs

| | |
|---|---|
| Can I have the key to my room? | **Nataka funguo za chumbani kwangu.** |
| I need ... | **Ninahitaji ...** |
| candles | **mishumaa** |
| toilet paper | **karatasi ya chooni** |
| soap | **sabuni** |
| clean sheets | **mabedshiti masafi** |
| an extra blanket | **blangeti jengine** |
| drinking water | **maji ya kunywa** |
| a lightbulb | **bulb** |
| a mosquito net | **chandarua** |
| mosquito repellant | **dawa ya mbu** |
| Please change the sheets. | **Tafadhali badilisha mabedshiti.** |
| I can't open/close the window. | **Siwezi kufungua/ kufunga dirisha.** |
| I have lost my key. | **Nimepoteza funguo zangu.** |
| The shower won't work. | **Shawa haifanyi kazi.** |
| How do I get hot water? | **Vipi nitapata maji ya moto?** |
| The toilet won't flush. | **Choo hakiflush.** |
| The water has been cut off. | **Maji yamekatwa.** |
| The electricity has been cut off. | **Umeme umekatwa.** |
| The gas has run out. | **Hamna gesi.** |
| The airconditioning doesn't work. | **Air-condition haifanyi kazi.** |

| | |
|---|---|
| The phone doesn't work. | **Simu haifanyi kazi.** |
| I can't flush the toilet. | **Siwezi kuflush choo.** |
| The toilet is blocked. | **Choo kimeziba.** |
| I can't switch off the tap. | **Siwezi kufunga mfereji.** |
| I need a plug for the bath. | **Ninataka kizibo cha bafu.** |
| Where is the plug socket? | **Plagi ya umeme iko wapi?** |
| There's a strange insect in my room. | **Kuna mdudu kwenye chumba changu.** |
| There's an animal in my room. | **Kuna mnyama kwenye chumba changu.** |
| Could you please wake me up at ... o'clock. | **Tafadhali niamshe saa ...** |
| wake-up call | **'niamshe-asubuhi'** |
| I am leaving now. | **Ninaondoka sasa hivi.** |
| We are leaving now. | **Tunaondoka sasa hivi.** |
| May I pay the bill now? | **Ninataka kulipa tafadhali.** |
| Do you have a needle and thread? | **Una uzi na shindano?** |

## Useful words

| | |
|---|---|
| bathroom | **choo** |
| bed | **kitanda** |
| blanket | **blangeti** |
| candle | **mshumaa** |
| chair | **kiti** |
| cold water | **maji ya baridi** |
| cupboard | **kabati** |

| | |
|---|---|
| doorlock | **kitasa cha mlango** |
| electricity | **umeme** |
| excluded | **zuia** |
| extra | **zaidi** |
| fridge | **friji** |
| hot water | **maji ya moto** |
| included | **na pamoja** |
| key | **ufunguo** |
| laundry | **dobi** |
| mattress | **godoro** |
| meal | **chakula** |
| mirror | **kioo** |
| name | **jina** |
| noisy | **ghasia** |
| padlock | **kufuli** |
| pillow | **mto** |
| (bath) plug | **plagi (ya bafu)** |
| (electric) plug | **plagi (ya umeme)** |
| quiet | **kimya** |
| room | **chumba** |
| room number | **nambari ya chumba** |
| sheet | **bedshiti** |
| shower | **shawa** |
| suitcase | **begi** |
| surname | **jina la babu** |
| table | **meza** |
| towel | **taula** |
| water | **maji** |
| window | **dirisha** |

**LAUNDRY** — There are few laundrettes in Kenya or Tanzania, so unless you're in a hotel which offers a laundry service, you'll either have to handwash your own clothes, or sort out a price for someone local to do this — there'll usually be someone willing to wash them. If you're washing clothes yourself, take care over which detergent you buy and watch out for insects getting into your things as they dry.

# 8. FOOD AND DRINK

Food plays an important part of Swahili life, and important events in all aspects of life, and the seasons are marked with a feast of one form or another. Expect to be offered a wide range of dishes, delicacies and drinks, which vary from region to region, and from season to season.

**EATING OUT** – All **hoteli** (small restaurants or cafés) serve simple meals, principally based around potatoes, rice, plantains, and **ugali** (thick cornmeal porridge), accompanied by chicken, goat, beef or vegetable stews, spinach, beans and occasionally fish. Portions can be generous, so if you want a half portion, ask for **nusu** (half).

| | |
|---|---|
| breakfast | **chai ya asubuhi** |
| lunch | **chakula cha mchana** |
| snack | **vitafunio** |
| dinner, supper | **chakula cha usiku** |
| dessert | **puding** |
| | |
| I'm hungry. | **Nina njaa.** |
| I'm thirsty. | **Nina kiu.** |
| Do you know a good restaurant? | **Unajua mkahawa mzuri?** |
| Do you have a table, please? | **Unayo meza?** |
| I would like a table for ... people, please. | **Ninataka meza ya watu ...** |
| | |
| Can I see the menu please? | **Ninaomba kuona menyu.** |
| I'm still looking at the menu. | **Bado ninatazama menyu.** |
| I would like to order now. | **Ninataka kuoda sasa hivi.** |
| | |
| What's this? | **Hichi nini?** |
| Is it spicy? | **Kina pilipili?** |

| | |
|---|---|
| Does it have meat in it? | **Kina nyama?** |
| Does it have alcohol in it? | **Kina pombe?** |
| Do you have ... ? | **Unayo ... ?** |
| We don't have ... | **Hatuna ...** |
| What would you recommend? | **Wewe unarikomend nini?** |
| Do you want ... ? | **Unataka ... ?** |
| Can I order some more ... ? | **Nataka kuoda ... zaidi.** |
| That's all, thank you. | **Asante sana.** |
| That's enough, thanks. | **Inatosha, asante.** |
| I haven't finished yet. | **Sijamaliza bado.** |
| I have finished eating. | **Sijamaliza kula bado.** |
| I am full up! | **Nimeshiba!** |
| Where are the toilets? | **Choo kiko wapi?** |
| I am a vegetarian. | **Sili samaki wala nyama.*** |
| I don't eat meat. | **Sili nyama.** |
| I don't eat pork. | **Sili nguruwe.** |
| I don't eat chicken or fish. | **Sili kuku wala samaki.** |
| I don't eat nuts. | **Sili njugu.** |
| I don't drink alcohol. | **Sinywi pombe.** |
| I don't smoke. | **Sifuti sigireti/sigara.** |
| I would like ... | **Ninataka ...** |
| an ashtray | **ashtray** |
| the bill | **bill** |
| a glass of water | **gilasi ya maji** |
| a bottle of water | **chupa ya maji** |
| a bottle of wine | **chupa ya mvinyo** |
| a bottle of beer | **chupa ya bia** |
| another bottle (of ...) | **engeza chupa (ya ...)** |
| a bottle-opener | **cha kufungulia chupa** |

* literally 'I don't eat fish or meat'.

| | |
|---|---|
| a corkscrew | **ufunguo wa chupa ya mvinyo** |
| dessert | **puding** |
| a drink | **kinywaji** |
| a fork | **uma** |
| another chair | **kiti chengine** |
| another plate | **sahani nyengine** |
| another glass | **gilasi nyengine** |
| another cup | **kikombe chengine** |
| a napkin | **napkin** |
| a glass | **gilasi** |
| a knife | **kisu** |
| a plate | **sahani** |
| a spoon | **kijiko** |
| a table | **meza** |
| a teaspoon | **kijiko cha chai** |
| a toothpick | **kijiti cha kuchokolea meno** |
| too much | **nyingi** |
| too little | **kidogo sana** |
| not enough | **haitoshi** |

### Table etiquette...

At a traditional Swahili meal, the food is spread out on a cloth or carpet and is eaten sitting down on the floor with the right hand (the left is considered unsuitable since it is used to wash one's private parts, and so you should avoid passing or accepting things with the left hand). If you are the guest you will be expected to be the first to start eating. You should always wash your hands before and after the meal. Note that people take off their shoes before entering a private home.

## Tastes

| | |
|---|---|
| fresh fruit | **matunda mapevu** |
| fresh fish | **samaki fresh** |
| spicy (hot) | **pilipili** |

| | |
|---|---|
| stale | **imechacha** |
| sour | **chungu** |
| sweet | **tamu** |
| bitter | **kali** |
| hot | **kali** |
| cold | **baridi** |
| salty | **inachumvi** |
| tasteless | **haina ladha** |
| bad | **mbaya** |
| tasty | **tamu** |

## Useful words

| | |
|---|---|
| appetizer | **kianzio** |
| bowl | **bakuli** |
| bread | **mkate** |
| butter | **siagi** |
| cup | **kikombe** |
| dessert | **kimalizio; puding** |
| fork | **uma** |
| glass | **gilasi** |
| knife | **kisu** |
| main course | **chakula muhimu** |
| margarine | **majarini** |
| meat | **nyama** |
| menu | **menyu** |
| pepper | **pilipili** |
| plate | **sahani** |
| sauce | **sosi** |
| set menu | **menyu maalumu** |
| spoon | **kijiko** |
| starter | **kianzio** |
| table | **meza** |

## Food in general

| | |
|---|---|
| bread | **mkate** |
| candy | **peremende/pipi** |

| | |
|---|---|
| cheese | **chizi** |
| chewing gum | **ubani** |
| egg | **yai** |
| flour | **unga** |
| french fries | **chips** |
| hamburger | **hamburger** |
| honey | **asali** |
| ice-cream | **ice-cream** |
| ketchup | **kechap** |
| mustard | **uwatu** |
| nut | **njugu** |
| oil | **mafuta** |
| pasta | **pasta** |
| pepper (black) | **pilipili manga** |
| pizza | **piza** |
| rice | **wali** |
| salad | **kachumbari; saladi** |
| salt | **chumvi** |
| sandwich | **sandweji** |
| soup | **supu** |
| sugar | **sukari** |
| vinegar | **siki** |
| yogurt | **mtindi** |

## Vegetables

| | |
|---|---|
| aubergine; eggplant | **biringani** |
| avocado | **parachichi** |
| beans | **maharagwe** |
| breadfruit | **shelisheli** |
| cabbage | **kabichi; kebeji** |
| carrots | **karoti** |
| cashew nuts | **korosho** |
| cassava | **muhogo** |
| cassava chips | **chipsi za muhogo** |
| celery | **figili** |
| cherry tomatoes | **tungule** |
| chickpeas | **dengu** |

| | |
|---|---|
| corn | **mahindi** |
| cow peas | **kunde** |
| cucumber | **tango** |
| garlic | **thumu; kitunguu thumu** |
| lentils | **adesi; dengu** |
| lettuce | **letis; saladi** |
| millet | **mtama** |
| mushroom | **yoga** |
| mushrooms | **uyoga** |
| okra; lady's fingers | **bamia** |
| olives | **zeituni** |
| onion/onions | **kitunguu/vitunguu** |
| peas | **njegere; choroko** |
| pepper(s) | **pilipili** |
| potato/potatoes | **mbatata** |
| sweet potato/sweet potatoes | **kiazi/viazi** |
| tomato | **tungule; nyanya** |
| tubers | **viazi** |
| vegetables | **mboga** |
| yams | **viazi** |

## Fruit & nuts

| | |
|---|---|
| apricot | **aprikoti** |
| bananas | **ndizi** |
| cape gooseberries | **kepguzbari** |
| cashew nuts | **korosho** |
| clementine | **kangaja** |
| coconut | **nazi** |
| custard apple | **topetope** |
| custard apples | **matopetope** |
| dates | **tende** |
| fig | **tini** |
| fruit | **matunda** |
| grapefruit | **balungi** |
| grapes | **zabibu** |
| guava | **pera** |
| jackfruit | **fenesi** |

| | |
|---|---|
| lemon; lime | **limau** |
| mandarin(s) | **sandara** |
| mango | **embe** |
| mangoes | **maembe** |
| melon | **tikiti** |
| nuts; peanuts | **njugu** |
| orange | **chungwa** |
| oranges | **machungwa** |
| papaya; pawpaw | **papai** |
| passion fruit | **pasheni** |
| peach | **pichi** |
| peanuts; ground nuts | **karanga; njugunyasa** |
| pear | **pea** |
| pineapple | **nanasi** |
| plantains | **ndizi (za mkono wa tembo)** |
| pomegranate | **komamanga** |
| strawberries | **stroberi** |
| tangerine | **chenza** |
| watermelon | **tikiti** |

## Meat & fish

Kenya and Tanzania are renowned for their meat and seafood. In Kenya especially there are special bars offering platters of roast meat (**nyama choma**), served with **ugali** and spinach along with beer and music. Don't be surprised if the menu offers game, which can include giraffe (**twiga**), zebra (**punda milia**), impala (**swalapala**), crocodile (**mamba**), and ostrich (**mbuni**).

| | |
|---|---|
| beef | **nyama ya ng'ombe** |
| burger | **baga** |
| chicken | **kuku** |
| fish | **samaki** |
| goat | **nyama ya mbuzi** |
| kebab | **mshikaki** |
| kebabs | **mishikaki** |

| | |
|---|---|
| lamb | **kondoo** |
| octopus | **pweza** |
| pork | **nyama ya nguruwe** |
| salmon | **samoni** |
| sardines | **dagaa** |
| shark | **papa** |
| shrimps | **kamba wadogo** |
| squid | **ngisi** |
| whitebait | **dagaa** |

## Drinks

Remember to ask for bottled drinks by brand name. In general, **pombe** is an alcoholic drink and **kinywaji** is a non-alcoholic one.

**ALCOHOL** — Alcohol is drunk everywhere, as in other parts of Africa. You may encounter disapproval in some cases for religious reasons, which should be respected. Aside from the usual international array of booze brands, you'll find a wide range of cheaper, locally produced wines, beers, and spirits, some of which are every bit as good. Although there are laws against home-brewing, you will find no end of opportunities to try homemade alcoholic drinks such as **tembo** (palm wine) and **pombe** (locally made beer). However, do avoid **chang'aa** (poteen or illegally distilled spirit) since there is a very real risk of going blind at best or death at worst from drinking contaminated batches.

**SOFT DRINKS** — On a local level, you have a choice of tasty fruit juices such as freshly squeezed **maji ya machungwa** (orange juice), **maji ya pasheni** (passion-fruit juice) or coconut milk (**maji ya madafu**). Tea (**chai**) is a highly popular beverage (grown locally) that tends to be brewed along with milk, sugar, and spices at the same time.

| | |
|---|---|
| alcohol | **pombe** |
| beer | **bia; biya** |
| bottle | **chupa** |
| half-bottle | **nusu chupa** |
| brandy | **brandi** |
| can | **kibati** |
| champagne | **champagne** |

| | |
|---|---|
| coffee | **kahawa** |
| coffee with milk | **kahawa ya maziwa** |
| cognac | **konyagi** |
| cold | **baridi** |
| cup | **kikombe** |
| fruit juice | **maji ya fruti** |
| gin | **jin** |
| gin and tonic | **jin na toniki** |
| glass | **gilasi** |
| ice | **barafu** |
| with ice | **na barafu** |
| no ice | **bila barafu** |
| lemonade | **soda ya limau** |
| milk | **maziwa** |
| mineral water | **maji ya soda/chupa** |
| tea | **chai** |
| tea with lemon | **chai na limau** |
| tea with milk | **chai ya maziwa** |
| no sugar | **bila ya sukari** |
| vodka | **vodka** |
| whisky | **wiski** |
| wine | **mvinyo** |
| red wine | **mvinyo nyekundu** |
| rosé | **mvinyo ya rosé** |
| white wine | **mvinyo nyeupe** |
| sparkling | **ya chemuchemu** |
| water | **maji** |

## More on food . . .

Food in East Africa can be a great discovery for the visitor. Each region has its own cuisine with its own special flavor. There is a wide variety of meat, fowl or fish based stews and grills, surrounded with vegetables and garnished with spices. Some common savory specialities include:

**bajia** — bhajis, or spicy balls made from mashed lentils or beans.

**biriani** — rice biryani, cooked with spices and meat, chicken or vegetables.
**kababu** — spicy meatballs.
**kima** — cooked mincemeat eaten with spaghetti or plain rice.
**kisamvu/kisambu** — cooked cassava leaves with spice or coconut milk.
**maharagwe/maharage** — beans or red kidney beans, often cooked with coconuts.
**mbaazi** — cow peas, cooked in water, salt and coconut milk.
**mchicha** — spinach, usually cooked with onions and tomatoes.
**mchuzi** — the general word for curry, eaten with plain rice.
**mseto** — a risotto of rice, lentils, and meat.
**samaki wa kupaka** — fish cooked in coconut milk and spices.

Rice (such as **pilau**, rice cooked with spices) or potatoes (**mbatata**) or sweet potatoes (**viazi**) will accompany a meal, but in some areas the staple will be a stiff porridge/mash very similar to polenta: **ugali** made from maize, cassava or millet flour, and **sima**, made from cornmeal. These are eaten with the fingers and dipped into sauce dishes.
Accompanying the above will be seasonal salads (**kachumbari** or **saladi**) and sauces — best when home-made — and perhaps a dessert such as **faluda** (a jelly-like milk pudding). Finish off your meal with fruit (**matunda**), like sliced **fenesi** (jackfruit), washed down with the ubiquitous tea or bottled drinks.
**SNACKS** — Sweet or savory, these include **vibibi** (mini pancakes), **visheti** (mini sweet pastries), **kashata** (sugar-almond candy), **kaimati** (mini doughnuts), **mkate wa kusukuma** (chapatis), **sambusa** (chicken, meat or vegetable samosas), **mahindi** (roasted corn cobs), **maandazi** (doughnuts), **vitumbua/vitobosho** (sweet flour and sugar fritters), **vileji** (a shortbread made from rice flour and sugar), and **biskuti** (cookies).
A particularly sweet choice is **halwa** (or **alua/halua**, a sweet made from sesame seeds or pistachio nuts). In Kenya you can find **mkate mayai**, fried eggs and minced meat wrapped in a pancake; in Tanzania it's called **mkate wa mayai**, and is a sweet version made without the mince, like American pound cake. **Nazi** (coconuts) come in all shapes and sizes including **madafu** (green coconuts full of sweet pulp and juice) and **mbata** ('dry' coconuts, i.e. like you find in a supermarket).

# 9. DIRECTIONS

| | |
|---|---|
| Where is ... ? | **Wapi ... ?** |
| the academy | **shule** |
| the airport | **airpoti** |
| the art gallery | **nyumba ya sanaa** |
| a bank | **benki** |
| the cathedral | **kanisa** |
| the church | **kanisa** |
| the city center | **mjini** |
| the consulate/embassy | **ubalozi** |
| the American embassy | **ubalozi wa Marekani** |
| the British embassy | **ubalozi wa Kingereza** |
| the ... hotel | **hoteli ...** |
| the information office | **ofisi ya habari** |
| the main square | **mjini** |
| the market | **marikiti** |
| the Ministry of ... | **Wizara ya ...** |
| the monastery | **nyumba ya watawa** |
| the mosque | **msikiti** |
| the museum | **makumbusho** |
| parliament | **bunge** |
| the police station | **kituo cha polisi** |
| the post office | **posta** |
| the station | **kituo** |
| the telephone center | **kituo cha simu** |
| a toilet/bathroom | **choo** |
| the university | **chuo kikuu** |

| | |
|---|---|
| What ... is this? | |
| bridge | **Hii ni daraja gani?** |
| building | **Hili ni jumba gani?** |
| district | **Hili ni jimbo gani?** |
| river | **Huu ni mto gani?** |

| | |
|---|---|
| road | **Hii ni njia gani?** |
| street | **Huu ni mtaa gani?** |
| suburb | **Hichi ni kijiji gani?** |
| town | **Huu ni mji gani?** |
| village | **Hichi ni kijiji gani?** |
| What is this building? | **Hili ni jumba gani?** |
| What is that building? | **Lile ni jumba gani?** |
| What time does it open? | **Saa ngapi linafunguliwa?** |
| What time does it close? | **Saa ngapi linafungwa?** |
| Can I park here? | **Ninaweza kupaki hapa?** |
| Are we on the right road for ... ? | **Njia hii ni sawa ya kwenda?** |
| How many kilometers is it to ... ? | **Kilomita ngapi ya kwenda?** |
| It is ... kilometers away. | **Ni kilomita ...** |
| How far is the next village? | **Kijiji cha pili kiko mbali?** |
| Where can I find this address? | **Wapi mtaa huu?** |
| Can you show me on the map? | **Nionyeshe kwenye ramani?** |
| How do I get to ... ? | **Nitafikaje ... ?** |
| I want to go to ... | **Ninataka kwenda ...** |
| Can I walk there? | **Ninaweza kwenda wa miguu?** |
| Is it far? | **Jee mbali?** |
| Is it near? | **Jee karibu?** |
| Is it far fromhere? | **Mbali na hapa?** |
| Is it near here? | **Karibu na hapa?** |
| It is not far. | **Sio mbali.** |

| | |
|---|---|
| Go straight ahead. | **Nenda moja kwa moja.** |
| Turn left. | **Pinda kushoto.** |
| Turn right. | **Pinda kulia.** |
| at the next corner | **corner ya pili** |
| at the traffic lights | **kwenye traffic light** |
| | |
| behind | **nyuma ya ...** |
| far | **mbali** |
| in front of | **mbele ya ...** |
| left | **kushoto** |
| near | **karibu** |
| opposite | **mkabala wa ...** |
| right | **kulia** |
| straight on | **moja kwa moja** |
| | |
| bridge | **daraja** |
| corner | **corner** |
| crossroads | **crossroads** |
| roundabout | **raundabaut; kipulefti** |
| | |
| north | **kaskazini** |
| south | **kusini** |
| east | **mashariki** |
| west | **magharibi** |

## More on etiquette ...

**VISITING** — There are polite ways of entering and leaving a room or someone's house. Before going in, you say **hodi!**, and you should wait until those inside reply **karibu!** (to one visitor) or **karibuni!** (to more than one visitor).

**YES & NO** — There is more than one way to say yes/no in Swahili, depending on the context. There are two words for yes: **ndio!** is a neutral, polite form; although not strictly the same as 'yes' in English, **iko** means 'yes, there is/are'. The situation is similar for no: **sio!** 'no!', and **hamna!** 'no there isn't/aren't'.

# 10. SHOPPING

Unless you find yourself in an international-style store with marked prices, you should be prepared to bargain or haggle for anything you want to buy, particularly for goods like curios or market produce. There are no hard rules about it or what your opening price should be, and your ability to bargain effectively in any language will come with experience!

| | |
|---|---|
| Where can I find a ... ? | **Wapi nitapata ... ?** |
| Where can I buy ... ? | **Wapi nitanunua ... ?** |
| Where's the market? | **Marikiti iko wapi?** |
| Where's the nearest ... ? | **Kuna ... hapa mtaani?** |
| Can you help me? | **Unaweza kunisaidia?** |
| Can I help you? | **Unahitaji msaada?** |
| I'm just looking. | **Ninatizama.** |
| I'd like to buy ... | **Nniataka kununua ...** |
| Could you show me some ... ? | **Nionyeshe ... ?** |
| Can I look at it? | **Ninaweza kuiona?** |
| Do you have any ... ? | **Unayo ... ?** |
| This. | **Hii.** |
| That. | **Ile** |
| I don't like it. | **Sijaipenda.** |
| I like it. | **Nimeipenda.** |
| Do you have anything cheaper? | **Unacho kitu cha rahisi?** |
| Do you have anything better? | **Unacho kitu kilokuwa kizuri?** |
| larger/smaller | **kidogo/kikubwa** |

| | |
|---|---|
| Do you have anything else? | **Unacho kitu chengine?** |
| Do you have any others? | **Unavyo vitu vengine?** |
| Sorry, this is the only one. | **Samahani, hicho ndio kilobaki.** |
| I'll take it. | **Ninataka hii.** |
| How much/many do you want? | **Unataka vingapi?** |
| How much is it? | **Ni bei gani?** |
| Can you write down the price? | **Niandikie bei?** |
| Could you lower the price? | **Unaweza kushusha bei?** |
| I don't have much money. | **Sina pesa za kutosha.** |
| Do you take credit cards? | **Unapokea credit card?** |
| Would you like it wrapped? | **Utapenda nikufungie?** |
| Will that be all? | **Hutaki kitu chengine?** |
| Thank you, good-bye. | **Asante, kwaheri.** |
| I want to return this. | **Ninataka kukirejesha.** |

## Outlets

| | |
|---|---|
| baker's | **duka la mikate** |
| bank | **benki** |
| barber's | **kinyozi** |
| I'd like a haircut please. | **Ninataka kukata nyewele.** |
| bookshop/bookstore | **duka la vitabu** |
| butcher's | **duka la nyama** |
| car spares shop | **duka la spea za gari** |
| chemist's/pharmacy | **famasi** |
| clothes shop | **duka la nguo** |

| | |
|---|---|
| dairy | **duka la maziwa na mayai** |
| dentist | **daktari wa meno** |
| department store | **duka la ghorofa** |
| dressmaker | **mshoni** |
| electrical goods store | **duka la vitu vya umeme** |
| florist | **duka la maua** |
| greengrocer | **duka la mboga** |
| hairdresser | **hairdresser** |
| hardware store | **duka la vifaa** |
| hospital | **hospitali** |
| kiosk | **kiosk** |
| laundry | **dobi** |
| market | **markiti; marikiti** |
| newsstand | **duka la magazeti** |
| shoeshop | **duka la viatu** |
| shop | **duka** |
| souvenir shop | **duka la suvenia** |
| stationer's | **duka la vifaa vya ofisi** |
| supermarket | **supermarket** |
| travel agent | **travel agent** |
| vegetable shop | **duka la mboga** |
| watchmaker's | **fundi wa saa** |

## Gifts

**ARTS & CRAFTS** — The East African nations boast numerous artists from the whole quality spectrum, and there are a great number of crafts and antique shops, notably in Zanzibar, Lamu, Mombasa, and Tanga, as well as there being a burgeoning market for electrical goods (imported from the far east via the Gulf states and India). Remember that there may be restrictions on what you can take out of the country. Buying art is little problem and you can spend many a pleasant afternoon as you are taken round various galleries to examine mini collections. Depending on where you are, quality art is also sold in the street and open spaces, e.g. metal work, jewelry, and wood carvings.

| | |
|---|---|
| amber | **ambari** |
| basket | **kikapu** |
| box | **boksi** |
| bracelet | **bangili; kikuku** |
| brooch | **brochi** |
| bowls | **bakuli** |
| candlestick | **cha kuwekea mshumaa** |
| carpet | **carpet** |
| chain | **mkufu** |
| chest | **sanduku** |
| clock | **saa** |
| copper | **shaba** |
| crystal | **chembechembe** |
| earrings | **herini** |
| gold | **dhahabu** |
| handicraft | **sanaa** |
| iron | **pasi/chuma** |
| jewelry | **vyombo vya dhahabu** |
| leather | **ngozi** |
| mat *floor* | **mkeka** |
| mat *tray/table* | **ungo** |
| metal | **chuma** |
| modern | **ya kisasa** |
| necklace | **kidani** |
| pot | **chungu** |
| pottery | **vyungu** |
| ring | **pete** |
| rosary | **tasbihi** |
| shield | **ngao** |
| silver | **fedha** |
| soapstone | **jiwe laini** |
| spear | **mkuki** |
| spoon | **kijiko** |
| steel | **chuma** |
| stone | **jiwe** |
| stool | **kibao cha kukalia** |

| | |
|---|---|
| traditional | **ya kiasili** |
| tray | **sinia** |
| vase | **jagi la kutilia maua** |
| watch | **saa** |
| wood | **mbao** |
| wood carvings | **makonde** |

## Clothes

See the note 'More On Swahili Clothing' on page 168.

| | |
|---|---|
| bag | **begi** |
| belt | **ukanda** |
| boots | **viatu** |
| cotton | **cotton** |
| dress | **kanzu** |
| handbag | **handbag** |
| hat | **kofia** |
| jacket | **koti** |
| jeans | **jeans** |
| leather | **ngozi** |
| necktie | **tai** |
| overcoat | **koti kubwa** |
| pocket | **mfuko** |
| scarf | **mafla** |
| shirt | **shati** |
| shoes | **viatu** |
| silk | **hariri** |
| socks | **soksi** |
| suit | **suti** |
| sweater | **sweta** |
| tights/pantyhose | **tights** |
| trousers | **suruwali** |
| umbrella/parasol | **muavuli** |
| underwear | **chupi** |
| uniform | **sari; uniform** |
| wool | **sufi** |

## Toiletries

| | |
|---|---|
| aspirin | **aspirini** |
| Band-Aid/plaster | **plasta** |
| comb | **kitana** |
| condom | **condom** |
| cotton wool | **pamba** |
| deodorant | **dawa ya kwapa** |
| hairbrush | **brushi ya nywele** |
| insect repellant | **dawa ya mbu** |
| lipstick | **lipstick** |
| mascara | **wanja** |
| mouthwash | **dawa ya kusukutuwa** |
| nail-clippers | **ya kukatia makucha** |
| perfume | **mafuta mazuri** |
| plaster/Band-Aid | **plasta** |
| powder | **podari** |
| razor | **kijembe** |
| razor blade | **kijembe cha kunyolea** |
| safety pin | **pini** |
| sanitary towels | **sodo** |
| shampoo | **shampu** |
| shaving cream | **krimu ya kunyolea** |
| soap | **sabuni** |
| sponge | **sponji** |
| sunblock cream | **krimu ya kuhafidhi ngozi** |
| tampons | **sodo** |
| tissues | **tishu** |
| toilet paper | **karatasi ya chooni** |
| toothbrush | **mswaki** |
| toothpaste | **dawa ya mswaki** |
| washing powder; detergent | **omo** |

## Stationery

| | |
|---|---|
| ballpoint | **kalamu; peni** |
| book | **buku; kitabu** |

| | |
|---|---|
| dictionary | **kamusi** |
| envelope | **bahasha** |
| guidebook | **kitabu cha ramani** |
| ink | **wino** |
| magazine | **gazeti** |
| map | **mepu** |
| road map | **mepu ya njia** |
| a map of Mombasa | **mepu ya Mombasa** |
| newspaper | **gazeti** |
| newspaper in English | **gazeti la Kingereza** |
| notebook | **'notebook'** |
| novels in English | **buku la Kingereza** |
| (piece of) paper | **karatasi** |
| pen | **kalamu; peni** |
| pencil | **penseli** |
| postcard | **postikadi** |
| scissors | **mkasi** |
| writing paper | **karatasi ya barua** |
| Do you have any foreign publications? | **Unayo magazeti ya nchi za nje?** |

## Photography

| | |
|---|---|
| How much is it to process (and print) this film? | **Bei gani kusafisha filmu?** |
| When will it be ready? | **Lini zitakuwa tayari?** |
| I'd like film for this camera. | **Ninataka filmu ya kamera hii.** |
| B&W (film) | **(film ya) black and white** |
| camera | **kamera** |
| color (film) | **(film ya) rangi** |
| film | **film** |
| flash | **flash** |
| lens | **lenz** |
| light meter | **light meter** |

## Smoking

Although technically frowned upon by Islam and some branches of Christianity, smoking is permissible in most areas. It is advisable to avoid constricted enclosed spaces if smoking creates problems for your health or if you simply find it offensive.

| | |
|---|---|
| A packet of cigarettes, please. | **Ninataka pakti ya sigareti.** |
| Are these cigarettes strong/mild? | **Sigareti hizi nzito/ nyepesi?** |
| Do you have a light? | **Unacho kibiriti?** |
| Do you have any American cigarettes? | **Unazo sigara za Kimarekani?** |
| cigar | **sigara** |
| cigarette papers | **chopri; karatasi ya sigareti** |
| cigarettes | **sigareti** |
| a carton of cigarettes | **bomba la sigareti** |
| filtered | **yenye filta** |
| filterless | **ya kusokota** |
| flint | **baruti** |
| lighter fluid | **mafuta ya kibiriti** |
| lighter | **kibiriti** |
| matches | **kibiriti** |
| menthol | **baridi** |
| pipe | **kiko** |
| tobacco | **tumbaku** |

## Electrical equipment

| | |
|---|---|
| adapter | **adepta** |
| battery | **battery** |
| cassette | **kaseti** |
| CD | **CD** |

| | |
|---|---|
| CD player | **CD player** |
| fan | **feni** |
| hairdryer | **mashine ya kukausha nywele** |
| heating coil | **koili ya kupasha moto** |
| iron *for clothing* | **pasi** |
| kettle | **birika** |
| plug | **plagi** |
| portable TV | **televisheni ndogo** |
| radio | **redio** |
| record | **reikodi** |
| tape (cassette) | **kaseti** *or* **kanda** |
| television | **televisheni** |
| videotape | **video** |
| voltage regulator | **mashine ya kurekebisha umeme** |

**LANGUAGE TIP** — For hi-tech stuff like cassettes, videos/video-players or transformers you are more likely to be understood if you use the English terms.

## Sizes

| | |
|---|---|
| small | **ndogo** |
| big | **kubwa** |
| heavy | **nzito** |
| light | **nyepesi** |
| more | **zaidi** |
| less | **kidogo** |
| many | **nyingi** |
| too much/too many | **nyingi sana** |
| enough | **inatosha** |
| that's enough | **hio inatosha** |
| also | **pia** |
| a little bit | **kidogo** |

| | |
|---|---|
| Do you have a carrier bag? | **Unao mfuko wa karatasi?** |

## Shops & markets

**WHEN TO SHOP** — On the Swahili Coast, shops tend to open around 9.30am until the midday prayers (lunchtime prayer is at 1.30pm and the afternoon prayer is at 3pm). Trading resumes at around 4pm and shops stay open until around 6pm. Food shops normally stay open until 10 or 11 at night, while more modern stores in the cities observe regular western opening times of 9am to 5pm. Markets (see below) are open every day from around 6 in the morning till 6 at night.

**HOW TO PAY** — Everything is best paid for in cash. Dollars are acceptable currency for larger transactions. Credit cards are increasingly acceptable in the cities but traveler's checks are still difficult to cash (you can do this in the big hotels but beware of commission charges). Many shops have price tags attached to items but in most places you will have to ask.

**MARKETS** — For fresh produce go to a **marikiti** where you're bound to find many local delicacies. Prices and availability of goods are seasonal. As a foreigner, you may occasionally find yourself paying a little more here — but not much! The best time is early morning when everything is at its freshest, particularly for fish and meat. In the evenings you'll get a better price, but less choice.

## Colors

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| black | **nyeusi** | pink | **waridi** |
| blue | **buluu** | purple | **zambarau** |
| brown | **kahawia** | red | **nyekundu** |
| green | **kijani** | white | **nyeupe** |
| orange | **manjano** | yellow | **manjano** |

# 11. WHAT'S TO SEE

| | |
|---|---|
| Do you have a guide-book/local map? | **Unacho kitabu cha ramani?** |
| Is there a guide who speaks English? | **Kuna guide anosema Kingereza?** |
| I want to see/visit ... | **Ninataka kwenda kuona ...** |
| We want to see/visit ... | **Tunataka kwenda kuona ...** |
| What is that? | **Kile ni nini?** |
| How old is it? | **Kina miaka mingapi?** |
| What animal is that? | **Mnyama gani yule?** |
| What fish is that? | **Samaki gani yule?** |
| What insect is that? | **Mdudu gani yule?** |
| May I take a photograph? | **Ninaweza kupiga picha?** |
| What time does it open? | **Saa ngapi inafunguliwa?** |
| What time does it close? | **Saa ngapi ninafungwa?** |
| What does that say? | **Inasema nini?** |
| Who is that statue of? | **Hili sanamu la nani?** |
| Is there an entrance fee? | **Kuna kiingilio?** |
| How much? | **Bei gani?** |
| Are there any nightclubs/ discos? | **Ziko disko?** |
| Where can I hear local folk music? | **Wapi pana musiki wa kienyeji?** |
| How much does it cost to get in? | **Bei gani kiingilio?** |
| When is the concert? | **Saa ngapi konseti?** |
| When is the wedding? | **Harusi iko lini?** |

| | |
|---|---|
| What time does it begin? | **Inaanza saa ngapi?** |
| Can we swim here? | **Tunaweza kuogolea?** |
| Is it safe to get out of the vehicle? | **Tunaweza kutoka ndani ya gari?** |
| Stay in the vehicle! | **Msitoke ndani ya gari!** |
| The animals are dangerous. | **Kuna wanyama wakali.** |

## Activities

| | |
|---|---|
| bar | **baa** |
| blues | **blues** |
| dancing | **kucheza ngoma** |
| disco | **disko** |
| disc jockey | **mpigaji wa disko** |
| exhibition | **maonyesho** |
| folk dancing | **ngoma ya kienyeji** |
| folk music | **muziki wa kienyeji** |
| jazz | **jazz** |
| music | **muziki** |
| party | **pati** |
| pop music | **muziki wa kileo** |
| rock 'n' roll | **maroki** |
| safari | **safari** |
| take-away food/take-out food | **chakula cha kununua** |

## Places

| | |
|---|---|
| apartment | **fleti** |
| apartment block/building | **bloki la mafleti** |
| archaeological | **na akiolojia** |
| art gallery | **nyumba ya sanaa** |
| bakery | **duka la mkate** |
| bar | **baa** |
| beer club | **kilabu** |

| | |
|---|---|
| building | **jumba** |
| café | **mkahawa; hoteli** |
| casino | **kasino** |
| castle | **kasri** |
| cemetery | **makaburini** |
| church | **kanisa** |
| cinema | **sinema** |
| city map | **ramani ya mji** |
| college | **shule** |
| concert hall | **jumba la michezo** |
| concert | **concert** |
| dispensary; pharmacy | **dispensari** |
| embassy | **ubalozi** |
| Equator | **Ikweta; Istiwai** |
| fort | **ngome** |
| game park | **hifadhi ya wanyama** |
| hospital | **hospitali** |
| house | **nyumba** |
| housing estate | **nyumba za msajili** |
| industrial estate | **sehemu ya mafektori** |
| library | **maktaba; 'library'** |
| lift/elevator | **lifti** |
| lodge | **loji** |
| main square | **katikati ya mjini** |
| market | **marikiti** |
| monument | **jengo la ukumbusho** |
| mosque | **msikiti** |
| museum | **makumbusho** |
| nightclub | **disko** |
| old city | **mji mkongwe** |
| park | **bustani** |
| parliament (building) | **jumba la bunge** |
| pharmacy; dispensary | **dispensari** |
| pub | **baa** |
| restaurant | **mkahawa; hoteli** |
| Rift Valley | **Bonde la Ufa** |
| ruins | **magofu** |

| | |
|---|---|
| school | **shule** |
| shop | **duka** |
| stadium | **uwanja wa mpira** |
| statue | **sanamu** |
| synagogue | **jumba la ibada la Mayahudi** |
| Hindu temple | **jumba la ibada la Mabaniani** |
| theatre | **jumba lamichezo** |
| tomb | **kaburi** |
| tower | **mnara** |
| university | **chuo kikuu** |
| zoo | **zuu** |

## Occasions

| | |
|---|---|
| birth | **kuzaa** |
| death | **kufa** |
| funeral | **maziko** |
| marriage | **harusi** |

### Religious heritage on the Coast

**ON THE COAST** — The Swahilis are for the most part Sunni Muslims. There are also sizeable minorities of Christians and Hindus as well as other religions, and aside from the many mosques along the coast, you will also discover historic churches and sumptuous temples. Every town or city has a large Friday mosque, the main mosque where the area's Muslims congregate for the Friday prayer.

## Holidays & festivals

**ISLAM** — The most important Islamic date in the national calendar is **Ramadhani** (Ramadan), the month of fasting. During Ramadan most stores and restaurants are closed during daylight hours in smaller towns in Islamic districts, though public transport and business continues as usual. Major feast days (**id**) are: **Idilfitri** or **Sikukuu Ndogo**, which marks the end of Ramadan and fasting; and, three months later, Muslims celebrate **Idilhaj** or **Sikukuu Kubwa**, which is when people traditionally come back from their pilgrimage to Mecca. Both are normally three or four days holiday. **Maulidi**, or the Prophet Muhammad's Birthday, is also an important day, while a big festival for Indian Shi'i Muslims is **Ashura**. Because of the influence of European tradition, Christmas (**Krismasi**) and New Year (**Mwaka Mpya**) are also celebrated.

**STATE HOLIDAYS (SIKUKUU)** — Along with Christmas and New Year, these include Good Friday (**Ijumaakuu**), Easter Sunday/Easter Monday (**Pasaka**, traditionally when sports weeks are held), International Labor Day (May 1, **Sikukuu ya Wafanyakazi**).

◆ Tanzania celebrates Union Day (April 26, **Sikukuu ya Muungano**), International Trade Fair Day (July 7, **Sikukuu ya Sabasaba**), Farmers' Day (August 8, **Sikukuu ya Wakulima**), and Independence and Republic Day (December 9, **Sikukuu ya Uhuru**). Zanzibar also celebrates Zanzibar Revolution Day (January 12, **Sikukuu ya Mapinduzi ya Unguja**).

◆ Kenya celebrates Madaraka Day (June 1, **Sikukuu ya Madaraka**), Moi Day (October 10, **Sikukuu ya Moi**), Kenyatta Day (October 20, **Sikukuu ya Kenyatta**), Jamhuri/Independence Day (December 12, **Sikukuu ya Jamhuri**), and Boxing Day (December 26).

◆ Uganda celebrates Heroes' Day (February 6, **Sikukuu ya Zalendo**), International Women's Day (**Sikukuu ya Wanawake**), Ugandan Martyrs' Day (June 3, **Sikukuu ya Mashahidi**), Independence Day (October 9, **Sikukuu ya Jamhuri**), and Boxing Day (December 26).

# 12. FINANCE

**CURRENCIES** – The official currency in East Africa is the **shilingi** or shilling, divided into 100 **senti** or cents. Unofficially in use, but still accepted everywhere outside of government establishments and retail outlets, are US dollars. These may be refused however if notes are creased, torn, old, or simply a low denomination. Be prepared to accept change in shilingi.

**CHANGING MONEY** – Aside from the banks, money can also be changed in any bureau de change or hotel. The cashiers all speak English and will often know another European language or two, and almost all will show the workings of the exchange on a calculator for you and give you a receipt. Many shops and kiosks will also be happy to change money for you. Dollars and pounds sterling are best. Be sure to check the currency is clearly marked when signing credit card slips, and always check the currency laws before entering East Africa.

| | |
|---|---|
| I want to change some dollars. | **Ninataka kubadilisha dollars.** |
| I want to change some pounds. | **Ninataka kubadilisha pauni.** |
| Where can I change some money? | **Wapi ninawaeza kubadilisha pesa?** |
| What is the exchange rate? | **Bei ya kubadilisha pesa?** |
| What is the commission? | **Bei gani kamishen?** |
| Could you please check that again? | **Tafadhali zitizame tena?** |
| Could you write that down for me? | **Niandikie, tafadhali.** |
| dollar | **dola; dollar** |
| euro | **'euro'** |

| | |
|---|---|
| franc | **faranga** |
| mark | **mark** |
| lira | **lira** |
| peseta | **peseta** |
| pound/sterling | **pauni** |
| bank notes | **pesa za noti** |
| bureau de change | **buro de chenji** |
| calculator | **kalkuleta** |
| cashier | **mhisabu** |
| coins | **senti** |
| credit card | **kadi ya malipo** |
| commission | **kamishen** |
| exchange | **kubadilisha** |
| loose change | **pesa ndogo ndogo; senti** |
| receipt | **risiti** |
| signature | **saini** |

## Sightseeing on the coast

Of course there are the stunning beaches and reefs and teeming sealife, but there are so many other things to see on the Swahili coast — most notably, the region's rich architecture. Nurturing a long urban tradition, the coastal communities have integrated many Middle Eastern and Asian cultural and architectural features with dazzling inventiveness. The entire coast of East Africa, stretching from Somalia to Mozambique, including the Comoros Islands and Madagascar, is dotted with great and lesser Swahili towns and settlements, often in ruins. Important centers such as Mogadishu, Pate, Lamu, Mombasa and Zanzibar are thriving towns still today, where Indian, Persian, Arabic and African building traditions blend together to form a unique and cosmopolitan heritage: the great houses of the Stone Town (**Mji Mkongwe**) in Zanzibar (now designated a world heritage conservation area by UNESCO), the fishing villages of Pate, the winding alleyways of the old towns and ports of Lamu and Mombasa, and the haunting ruins of Gede Palace. One way of seeing the islands is to hire one of the traditional dhows which are still used by fishermen and merchants to ply their trade in the same way as they have done for centuries.

# 13. COMMUNICATIONS

| | |
|---|---|
| Where is the post office? | **Posta iko wapi?** |
| What time does the post office open? | **Posta ina funguliwa saa ngapi?** |
| What time does the post office close? | **Posta inafungwa saa ngapi?** |
| Where is the mail box? | **Wapi pa kutia barua?** |
| Is there any mail for me? | **Ziko barua zangu?** |
| How long will it take for this to get there? | **Itachukua muda gani barua kufika?** |
| How much does it cost to send this to ... ? | **Bei gani kupeleka barua ... ?** |
| I would like some stamps. | **Ninataka stampu.** |
| I would like to send ... | **Ninataka kupeleka ...** |
| a letter | **barua** |
| a postcard | **postkadi** |
| a parcel | **mzigo** |
| a telegram | **telegram** |
| air mail | **kwa ndege** |
| envelope | **bahasha** |
| mailbox | **sanduku la barua** |
| parcel | **mzigo** |
| registered mail | **barua ya rejista** |
| stamp | **stempu** |

## Tele-etiquette

| | |
|---|---|
| I would like to make a phone call. | **Ninataka kupiga simu.** |
| I would like to send a fax. | **Ninataka kupeleka feksi.** |

| | |
|---|---|
| I would like to send a telex. | **Ninataka kupeleka teleks.** |
| Where is the telephone? | **Iko wapi simu?** |
| May I use your phone? | **Ninaweza kutumia simu?** |
| Can I telephone from here? | **Ninaweza kupiga simu kutoka hapa?** |
| Can you help me get this number? | **Tafadhali nipatie nambari hii?** |
| Can I dial direct? | **Ninaweza kupiga simu moja kwa moja?** |
| May I speak to Mr. ... ? | **Ninataka kuzungumza na Bwana ...** |
| May I speak to Ms/ Mrs. ... ? | **Ninataka kuzungumza na Bibi ...** |
| Can I leave a message? | **Ninaweza kuwacha maagizo?** |
| Who is calling, please? | **Nani anozungumza?** |
| Who are you calling? | **Unamtaka nani?** |
| Can I take your name? | **Niambia jina lako?** |
| Which number are you dialing? | **Unapiga nambari gani?** |
| He/She is not here at the moment — would you like to leave a message? | **Hayupo — unataka kumacha agizo?** |
| This is not ... | **Hii sio nambari ...** |
| You are mistaken. | **Umekosea.** |
| This is the ... office. | **Hii ni ofisi ya ...** |
| Hello, I need to speak to ... | **Hallo, ninataka kuzungumza na ...** |

| | |
|---|---|
| Sorry wrong number. | **Samahani, nimekosea nambari.** |
| I am calling this number ... | **Ninapiga numbari hii ...** |
| I want to ring ... | **Ninataka kumpigia simu ...** |
| What is the code for ... ? | **Kodi gani ...?** |
| What is the international code for ... ? | **Ipi kodi ya 'international' ... ?** |
| What do I dial for an outside line? | **Nambari ngapi ya lain ya nje?** |
| The number is ... | **Nambari ni hii ...** |
| The extension is ... | **Extension ni ...** |
| It's engaged/busy. | **Inazungumza.** |
| There's no dialing/busy tone. | **Simu haifanyi kazi.** |
| I've been cut off. | **Imekatika.** |
| The lines have been cut. | **Lain imekatika.** |
| Where is the nearest public phone? | **Simu ya karibu iko wapi?** |
| digital | **dijital** |
| e-mail | **e-mail** |
| extension | **extension** |
| extension number | **nambari ya extension** |
| fax | **feksi; faks** |
| fax machine | **mashine ya feksi** |
| handset | **simu** |
| international operator | **opereta wa international** |
| internet | **internet** |
| line | **lain** |
| mobile phone; cell phone | **simu ya mkono; mobitel** |
| modem | **modem** |

| | |
|---|---|
| operator | **opereta** |
| satellite phone | **simu ya satelaiti** |
| telecommunications | **mawasiliano** |
| telephone center | **kituo cha simu** |
| telex | **telex** |
| to transfer/put through | **kutransfer** |

## Faxing & e-mailing

| | |
|---|---|
| Where can I send a fax from? | **Wapi ninaweza kutumia feksi?** |
| Can I fax from here? | **Ninataka kutuma feksi?** |
| How much is it to fax? | **Kiasi gani kutuma feksi?** |
| Where can I find a place to e-mail from? | **Wapi ninaweza kutuma e-mail?** |
| Is there an internet cafe near here? | **Kuna internet cafe hapa jirani?** |
| Can I e-mail from here? | **Ninaweza kutuma e-mail kutoka hapa?** |
| How much is it to use a computer? | **Kiasi gani kutumia kompyuta?** |
| How do you turn on this computer? | **Vipi unawasha kompyuta hii?** |
| The computer has crashed. | **Kompyuta imeharibika.** |
| I don't know how to use this program. | **Sijui kutumia program hii.** |
| I know how to use this program. | **Ninajua kutumia program hii.** |
| I want to print. | **Nataka kuprint.** |

# 14. THE OFFICE

| | |
|---|---|
| chair | **kiti** |
| computer | **kompyuta** |
| desk | **deski** |
| drawer | **drawer** |
| fax | **fax** |
| file *paper/computer* | **faili** |
| meeting | **mkutano** |
| paper | **karatasi** |
| pen | **kalamu; peni** |
| pencil | **penseli** |
| photocopier | **mashine ya fotokopi** |
| photocopy | **fotokopi** |
| printer | **printa** |
| (computer) program | **program (ya kompyuta)** |
| report | **ripoti** |
| ruler | **rula** |
| scanner | **skana** |
| telephone | **simu** |
| telex | **telex** |
| typewriter | **teipreta** |

**ELECTRIC CURRENT** — Tanzania is 230 volts, uses square three-pin (as used in the British Isles) or two-pin plugs. Kenya is 220-230 volts and uses square three-pin plugs, but only the higher range hotels tend to have outlets or shaver points in the bathrooms. Uganda also uses three-pin plugs. The supply, however, may not be constantly at full voltage and lengthy power failures may be common, particularly in the rainy seasons. Although many buildings will now have their own back-up generators in case of power failure, be sure to keep a torch/flashlight or supply of candles.

# 15. THE CONFERENCE

| | |
|---|---|
| agenda | **mada** |
| article | **makala** |
| a break for refreshments | **mapunziko** |
| chairman/chairwoman | **mwenyekiti** |
| conference room | **chumba cha mkutano** |
| copy | **kopi** |
| discussion | **majadiliano** |
| forum | **baraza** |
| guest speaker | **spika alioalikwa** |
| a (written) paper | **makala** |
| podium | **kiriri** |
| projector | **projekta** |
| session | **kikao** |
| a session chaired by ... | **mwenyekiti wa kikao ...** |
| speaker | **spika** |
| subject | **mada** |

## Some common expressions . . .

Here are a few expressions you'll hear in everyday conversation:

| | |
|---|---|
| **mpe!** | give it to him/her! |
| **nipe!** | give me it/them! |
| **njo!** | come!; come on! |
| **ngojea!** | wait! |
| **shika!** | take it/them! |
| **sawa!** | right! |
| **basi!** | that's enough! |

# 16. ANIMALS

Wild and domestic, East Africa's teeming animal life is spread across backyards, ranches, rolling savannah, mountains, great lakes, and seas. Undeterred by the encroachments of the modern world, pollution, and severe poaching, a great variety of wildlife still survives in the game reserves, where you can still see big cats hunting the massive seasonal migrations of antelope and wildebeest across the Serengeti plains, gorillas in the highlands to the far west, or exotic fish in the reefs of the Indian Ocean. You can even watch Swahili bull-fighting on Pemba island (a legacy of the Portuguese — and no, they don't kill them!). You may be intrigued by the lack of horses on the coast (caused by the danger of tsetse fly), or the near absence of poisonous snakes on Zanzibar. It is impossible to cover all the wildlife, but the list below should give you a start. Remember that not only will animals and species vary from area to area, but so too will their names, often under the influence of local languages. A useful phrase is **Huyo ni mnyama gani?** — 'What's that animal?'

## Mammals

| | |
|---|---|
| animal | **mnyama** |
| animals | **wanyama** |
| antelope | **pofu** |
| baboon | **nyani** |
| bongo | **bongo** |
| buffalo | **mbogo** |
| bull | **ng'ombe** |
| bushbaby | **komba** |
| bushbuck | **pongo** |
| camel | **ngamia** |
| cat | **paka** |
| cheetah | **duma** |
| chimpanzee | **sokwe** |
| civet | **fungo** |
| civet cat | **ngawa** |
| cow | **ng'ombe** |

| | |
|---|---|
| deer | **paa** |
| dik-dik | **dikidiki** |
| dog | **mbwa** |
| Beware of the dog! | **Mbwa kali!** |
| donkey | **punda** |
| duiker | **funo** |
| eland | **pofu** |
| elephant | **tembo** |
| ferret | **nguchiro** |
| flock | **kundi** |
| fox | **mbweha** |
| gazelle | **swala** |
| giraffe | **twiga** |
| gnu | **nyumbu; mbogo** |
| goat | **mbuzi** |
| gorilla | **sokwe** |
| hartebeest | **kongoni** |
| herd | **kundi** |
| hippopotamus | **kiboko** |
| horse | **farasi** |
| hyena | **fisi** |
| hyrax | **pelele; kwanga** |
| impala | **impala** |
| jackal | **mbweha** |
| kudu | **tandala** |
| lamb | **kondoo** |
| leopard | **chui** |
| lion | **simba** |
| mare | **farasi jike** |
| mongoose | **nguchiro** |
| monkey | **tumbili** |
| mouse | **panya** |
| mule | **nyumbu** |
| oryx | **choroa** |
| pig | **nguruwe** |
| pony | **farasi mdogo** |
| rabbit | **sungura** |

| | |
|---|---|
| ram | **kondoo dume** |
| rat | **panya** |
| reedbuck | **tohe** |
| rhinoceros | **kifaru** |
| roan antelope | **kulungu** |
| sable antelope | **palahala** |
| sheep | **kondoo** |
| sheepdog | **mbwa wa kuchunga kondoo** |
| stallion | **farasi dume** |
| topi | **nyemera** |
| warthog | **ngiri** |
| waterbuck | **kuru** |
| water buffalo | **nyati** |
| wildebeest | **nyumbu; mbogo** |
| zebra | **punda milia** |

## Birds

| | |
|---|---|
| bird(s) | **ndege** |
| chicken/hen | **kuku** |
| cock/rooster | **jogoo** |
| crow | **kunguru** |
| duck | **bata** |
| eagle | **tai** |
| flamingo | **heroe** |
| goose | **bata** |
| guinea fowl | **kanga** |
| hawk | **mwewe** |
| ostrich | **mbuni** |
| owl | **bunju** |
| peacock | **tausi** |
| turkey | **bata mzinga** |
| vulture | **tai; gushu** |

## Insects & amphibians

| | |
|---|---|
| ants | **sisimizi** |
| army ants | **siafu** |
| bee | **nyuki** |
| butterfly | **kipepeo** |
| caterpillar | **kiwavu** |
| centipede | **tandu** |
| chameleon | **kinyonga** |
| cobra | **swila** |
| cockroach | **mende** |
| crocodile | **mamba** |
| firefly | **kimetameta; kimulimuli** |
| fish | **samaki** |
| flea | **kiroboto** |
| fleas | **viroboto** |
| fly | **nzi** |
| frog | **chura** |
| gecko | **mjusi kafiri** |
| insect | **mdudu** |
| insects | **wadudu** |
| lizard | **mjusi** |
| louse/lice | **chawa** |
| mosquito(es) | **mbu** |
| python | **chatu** |
| scorpion | **nge** |
| snail | **konokono** |
| snake | **nyoka** |
| spider | **buibui** |
| termite | **mchwa** |
| tick | **kupe** |
| tortoise | **kobe** |
| turtle | **kasa** |
| wasp | **nyigu** |
| worm | **mnyoo** |

# 17. COUNTRYSIDE

| | |
|---|---|
| canal | **mto** |
| cave | **pango** |
| dam | **lambo** |
| earthquake | **mtetemeko wa ardhi** |
| fire | **moto** |
| flood | **mafuriko** |
| foothills | **kilima** |
| footpath | **uchochoro** |
| forest | **msitu** |
| hill | **kilima** |
| lake | **mto** |
| landslide | **mteremko wa ardhi** |
| mountain | **mlima** |
| mountain pass | **ujia mwembamba mlimani** |
| peak | **kilele** |
| plain/plains | **uwanda** |
| plant | **mmea** |
| range/mountain range | **safu ya milima** |
| ravine | **korongo** |
| river | **mto** |
| river bank | **ukingo wa mto** |
| rock | **jabali** |
| savannah | **savana** |
| serengeti | **serengeti** |
| slope | **mteremko** |
| stream | **mto** |
| summit | **kilele** |
| swamp | **bwawa** |
| tree | **mti** |
| valley | **bonde** |
| waterfall | **mteremko wa maji** |
| a wood | **msitu** |

# 18. THE SEA

See also the note on 'Sightseeing on the Coast' on page 153.

| | |
|---|---|
| beach | **bichi** |
| Where's a good beach? | **Wapi bichi nzuri?** |
| boat | **mashua; boti** |
| coast | **pwani** |
| coral | **tumbawe** |
| currents: Are there any dangerous currents? | **Kuna mkondo wowote wa hatari?** |
| dhow | **jahazi** |
| deep sea | **bahari kuu** |
| ferry | **feri** |
| hurricane | **kimbunga** |
| Indian Ocean | **Bahari ya Bara Hindi** |
| ocean | **bahari** |
| palm tree | **mnazi** |
| reef | **mwamba** |
| sailboat | **mashua** |
| sand | **mchanga** |
| sea | **bahari** |
| sea urchin | **uyumba; mashanuo** |
| sea water | **maji ya chumvi** |
| shark | **papa** |
| ship | **meli** |
| storm | **kivumbi; dhoruba** |
| sunblock cream | **krimu ya kuhifadhi ngozi** |
| wave | **wimbi** |
| waves | **mawimbi** |
| water: shallow water | **maji yamekupwa** |
| deep water | **maji mengi** |
| wind | **upepo** |
| What time is high tide? | **Saa ngapi maji yanajaa?** |
| What time is low tide? | **Saa ngapi maji yanakupwa?** |

## Sea sports

| | |
|---|---|
| air | **hewa** |
| beachmat | **mkeka wa kutumia pwani** |
| diving | **kupiga mbizi** |
| diving mask | **maski** |
| fishing | **kuvua** |
| deep sea fishing | **kuvua kwenye bahari kuu** |
| flippers | **viatu vya kuogelea** |
| oxygen | **oksijeni** |
| oxygen bottle | **chupa ya oksijeni** |
| sailboard | **bao lenye tanga** |
| scuba-diving | **kupiga mbizi kwa skuba** |
| snorkel | **snokel** |
| snorkeling | **kuzamia mbizi** |
| sunbathing | **kuoka jua** |
| sunshade | **mwavuli wa pwani** |
| surfboard | **ubao wa kutueleza mawimbini** |
| surfing | **mchezo wa kutueleza mawimbini** |
| swimming | **kuogolea** |
| waterskis | **wota-ski** |
| waterskiing | **mchezo wa kuteleza baharini** |

## Emergency

| | |
|---|---|
| lifeguard | **askari wa kuokoa; mwokoaji** |
| Is there a lifeguard? | **Yupo askari wa kuokoa?** |
| stomach cramps | **mkamato wa tumbo** |
| Someone's drowning! | **Kuna mtu anazama!** |
| We're sinking. | **Tunazama!** |
| Help! | **Saidia!** |
| I can't swim! | **Sijui kuogolea!** |
| Is this fish dangerous? | **Samaki huyu ana hatari?** |
| I've been bitten! | **Nimetafunwa!** |
| It was this that bit me. | **Nimetafunwa na huyu.** |
| Shark! | **Papa!** |

# 19. THE WEATHER

The climate on the East African Coast is ruled by the monsoons brought on by the trade winds that link the landmasses of the Indian Ocean. Further inland the weather takes its annual climate patterns according to altitude. Some useful common terms that will help you inquire about the weather wherever you find yourself are **miezi ya mvua** 'rainy season', **miezi ya joto** 'hot season', **siku za dhoruba** 'stormy period', and **siku za baridi** 'cold period'. **Masika** is the period of long rains, **vuli** the short rains.

| | |
|---|---|
| What's the weather like? | **Vipi hali ya hewa?** |
| The weather is ... today. | **Hali ya hewa ni ... leo.** |
| cold | **baridi** |
| cool/fresh | **baridi kidogo** |
| cloudy | **wingu** |
| reezing | **baridi sana** |
| hot | **joto** |
| misty | **umande** |
| very hot | **joto sana** |
| windy | **upepo** |
| It's going to rain. | **Itanyesha mvua.** |
| It is raining. | **Inanyesha mvua.** |
| It's going to snow. | **Itaanguka theluji.** |
| It is snowing. | **Inaanguka theluji.** |
| It is sunny. | **Jua limetoka.** |
| The temperature is high. | **Joto.** |
| The temperature is low. | **Hamna joto.** |
| air | **hewa** |
| cloud | **mawingu** |
| drought | **ukame** |

| | |
|---|---|
| frost | **jalidi** |
| full moon | **mwezi mpevu** |
| heatwave | **joto sana** |
| ice | **barafu** |
| moon | **mwezi** |
| new moon | **mwezi mchanga** |
| rain | **mvua** |
| snow | **theluji** |
| star | **nyota** |
| sun | **jua** |
| weather | **hali ya hewa** |

## More on Swahili clothing

On the coast most people are Muslim and you should have regard for local sensibilities. Loose fitting clothes are best: wear long-sleeved shirts with skirts and trousers in town. Keep swimming costumes just for the beach and poolsides. In particular, when visiting any religious institution, you must be 'modestly' dressed.

- Women's traditional clothing on the Coast includes:

  **kanga** — wrappers of printed cotton patterns (including a slogan or saying in Swahili) which are usually worn in pairs (as an outer skirt and on the head or shoulders).

  **buibui** — a (usually black) open cloth that covers the head and body from head to toe, it can be used to veil all or part of oneself equally from the public eye or the elements. Note that this is a traditional garment and is worn by women from all backgrounds and religions.

  **mtandio** — a light shawl, often of chiffon, that covers the shoulders and head as required.

- Men's traditional clothing includes:

  **kanzu** — a light kaftan-style garment.

  **kikoi** — a cotton wrapper with brightly colored stripes, worn instead of trousers under the **kanzu**.

  **saruni** — a sarong of lighter patterned cloth which may be worn under the **kanzu** or by itself.

  **kofia** — an embroidered cap.

# 20. CAMPING

| | |
|---|---|
| Where can we camp? | **Wapi pakuweka kambi?** |
| Can we camp here? | **Tunaweza kuweka kambi hapa?** |
| Is it safe to camp here? | **Pana usalama kuweka kambi hapa?** |
| Is there danger of wild animals? | **Kuna wanyama wabaya hapa?** |
| Is there drinking water? | **Kuna maji ya kunywa?** |
| May we light a fire? | **Tunaweza kuwasha moto hapa?** |

## Kit

| | |
|---|---|
| axe | **shoka** |
| backpack | **mkoba wa mgongoni** |
| bucket | **ndoo** |
| campsite | **pahala pa kuweka kambi** |
| can opener | **ufunguo wa kopo** |
| compass | **kompasi** |
| firewood | **kuni** |
| flashlight | **tochi** |
| gas canister | **chupa ya gesi** |
| hammer | **nyundo** |
| ice ax; ice pick | **kishoka** |
| lamp | **taa** |
| mattress | **godoro** |
| penknife | **kisu cha kupinda** |
| rope | **kamba** |
| sleeping bag | **mfarishi** |
| stove | **jiko** |
| tent | **hema** |
| tent pegs | **vifungio vya hema** |
| water bottle | **chupa ya maji** |

# 21. IN CASE OF EMERGENCY

**COMPLAINING** — If you really feel you have been cheated or misled, raise the matter first with your host or the proprietor of the establishment in question, preferably with a smile. Swahilis are proud but courteous, with a deeply felt tradition of hospitality, and consider it their duty to help any guest. Angry glares and shouting will get you nowhere.

**CRIME** — East Africans are both law-abiding and god-fearing people, but petty crime does occur. Without undue paranoia, take the usual precautions: watch your wallet or purse, securely lock your equipment and baggage before handing it over to railway or airline porters, and don't leave valuables on display in your hotel room. If you are robbed, contact the police. Of course in the more remote areas, sensible precautions should be taken, and always ensure that you go with a guide. In general, follow the same rules as you would in your own country and you will run little risk of encountering crime.

**WHAT TO DO IF YOU LOSE SOMETHING** — Save time and energy by appealing only to senior members of staff or officials. If you have lost items in the street or left anything in public transport, it is unlikely you will retrieve it.

**DISABLED FACILITIES** — The terrain and conditions throughout most of East Africa do not make it easy for disabled visitors, particularly those in wheelchairs, to get around even at the best of times. Access to most buildings in the towns and cities is difficult, particularly since the majority of elevators function irregularly and ramps are rare. Facilities are not always available in hotels, airports or other public areas. However, human assistance will always be offered wherever you go and people will go to great lengths to help out, sometimes to the point of overkill.

**TOILETS** — You will find public utilities located in any important or official building. You may use those in hotels or restaurants. You may sometimes encounter failed plumbing and absence of toilet paper. Similar to Turkey and countries in the Middle East and North Africa, many people find it more hygienic to use water from a conveniently positioned tap or jug instead of toilet paper.

| | |
|---|---|
| wheelchair | **kiti cha magurudumu** |
| disabled | **mlemavu** |
| Do you have seats for the disabled? | **Viko viti vya walemavu?** |

| | |
|---|---|
| Do you have access for the disabled? | **Ziko huduma za walemavu?** |
| Do you have facilities for the disabled? | **Ziko huduma za walemavu?** |
| Help! | **Saidia!** |
| Could you help me, please? | **Unaweza kunisaidia?** |
| Do you have a telephone? | **Unayo simu?** |
| Can I use your telephone? | **Ninaweza kutumia simu?** |
| Where is the nearest telephone? | **Simu ya karibu iko wapi?** |
| Does the phone work? | **Simu inafanya kazi?** |
| Get help quickly! | **Lete msaada haraka!** |
| Call the police. | **Ita polisi!** |
| I'll call the police! | **Nitaita polisi!** |
| Is there a doctor near here? | **Kuna daktari hapa karibu?** |
| Call a doctor. | **Mwite daktari.** |
| Call an ambulance. | **Ita gari la wagonjwa.** |
| I'll get medical help! | **Nitatafuta daktari!** |
| Where is the doctor? | **Yuko wapi daktari?** |
| Where is the hospital? | **Iko wapi hospitali?** |
| Where is the pharmacy? | **Duka la madawa liko wapi?** |
| Where is the dentist? | **Daktari wa meno yuko wapi?** |
| Where is the police station? | **Kituo cha polisi kiko wapi?** |
| Take me to a doctor. | **Nipeleke kwa daktari.** |
| There's been an accident! | **Kumetokea ajali!** |
| Is anyone hurt? | **Kuna alio umia?** |
| This person is hurt. | **Mtu huyu ameumia.** |
| There are people injured. | **Kuna watu wameumia.** |
| Don't move! | **Usiondoke!** |

| | |
|---|---|
| Go away! | **Nenda zako!** |
| I am lost. | **Nimepotea.** |
| I am ill. | **Ninaumwa.** |
| I've been raped. | **Nimenajisiwa.** |
| I've been robbed. | **Nimeibiwa.** |
| Thief! | **Mwizi!** |
| My ... has been stolen. | **Nimeibiwa ... yangu.** |
| I have lost ... | **Nimepoteza ...** |
| my bags | **mabegi yangu** |
| my camera equipment | **kamera yangu** |
| my handbag | **mkoba wangu** |
| my laptop computer | **kompyuta yangu** |
| my money | **pesa zangu** |
| my passport | **paspoti yangu** |
| my sound equipment | **chombo changu cha sauti** |
| my traveler's checks | **traveller's cheques zangu** |
| my wallet | **pochi yangu** |
| My possessions are insured. | **Vitu vyangu vina bima.** |
| I have a problem. | **Nina matatizo.** |
| I didn't do it. | **Sijafanya.** |
| I'm sorry. | **Samahani.** |
| I apologize. | **Naomba msamaha.** |
| I didn't realize anything was wrong. | **Sijajua kitu.** |
| I want to contact my embassy/consulate. | **Ninataka kuwajulisha ubalozi wangu.** |
| I speak English. | **Ninazungumza Kingereza.** |
| I need an interpreter. | **Ninahitaji mkalimani.** |
| Where are the toilets/ bathrooms? | **Choo kiko wapi?** |

# 22. HEALTHCARE

**HEALTH/MEDICAL INFORMATION** — Make sure any insurance policy you take out covers East Africa, although in practice this will only help in flying you out in case of a serious accident or illness.
**MALARIA** — It is worth your while to research the various drugs on offer and the potential side-effects they may provoke before deciding on which to take.
**CHEMISTS/PHARMACIES** (or **famasi**) are easy to find but can be understocked at times. If planning to travel off the beaten track, it is probably best to bring a sufficient supply of any specific medication you require. But since there is an excellent network of clinics with well stocked dispensaries/pharmacies (**dispensari**) throughout East Africa, most of the familiar range of medicines can be found. Don't forget to check the 'best before' date.
**DOCTORS** — In all the main towns there are private doctors who will come to you if you make an appointment. Some surgeries are held in doctor's houses, indicated by a sign at the entrance.

| | |
|---|---|
| What's the trouble? | **Kuna matatizo gani?** |
| I am sick. | **Ninaumwa.** |
| My companion is sick. | **Rafiki yangu anaumwa.** |
| May I see a female doctor? | **Ninahitaji daktari mwanamke?** |
| I have medical insurance. | **Nina bima ya siha.** |
| Please undress. | **Tafadhali vua nguo.** |
| How long have you had this problem? | **Kwa muda gani una matatizo haya?** |
| How long have you been feeling sick? | **Kwa muda gani unaumwa?** |
| Where does it hurt? | **Maumivu yako wapi?** |
| It hurts here. | **Panauma hapa.** |
| I have been vomiting. | **Ninatapika.** |
| I feel dizzy. | **Ninaona kizunguzungu.** |

| | |
|---|---|
| I can't eat. | **Siwezi kula.** |
| I can't sleep. | **Siwezi kulala.** |
| I feel worse. | **Najisikia vibaya sana.** |
| I feel better. | **Naona afadhali kidogo.** |
| Do you have diabetes? | **Unayo maradhi ya kisukari?** |
| Do you have epilepsy? | **Unacho kifafa?** |
| Do you have asthma? | **Unayo pumu?** |
| I have diabetes. | **Ninayo maradhi ya kisukari.** |
| I have epilepsy. | **Ninacho kifafa.** |
| I have asthma. | **Ninayo pumu.** |
| I'm pregnant. | **Mimi ni mja mzito.** *or* **Nina mimba.** |
| I have ... | **Nina ...** |
| You have ... | **Una ...** |
| a cold | **baridi** |
| a cough | **kikohozi** |
| a headache | **maumivu ya kichwa** |
| a pain | **maumivu** |
| a sore throat/tonsils | **roho inauma** |
| a temperature | **homa** |
| an allergy | **miko** |
| an infection | **maambu kizo** |
| an itch | **muwasho** |
| backache | **maumivu ya mgongo** |
| constipation | **kuziba choo** |
| diarrhea | **harisha** |
| fever | **homa** |
| hepatitis | **hepatitis** |
| indigestion | **kiungulia** |
| influenza | **flu** |

| | |
|---|---|
| a heart condition | **maradhi ya moyo** |
| pins and needles | **kufa ganzi** |
| stomachache | **maumivu ya tumbo** |
| a fracture | **kutetereka kwa viungo** |
| toothache | **maumivu ya jino** |
| I take this medication. | **Nimepewa dawa hii.** |
| I need medication for ... | **Ninahitaji dawa ya...** |
| What type of medication is this? | **Hii ni dawa gani?** |
| How many times a day must I take it? | **Kutwa mara ngapi?** |
| When should I stop? | **Lini nimalize kula dawa?** |
| I'm on antibiotics. | **Ninakula dawa za kukata sumu.** |
| I'm allergic to antibiotics. | **Dawa za kukata sumu inanidhuru.** |
| I'm allergic to penicillin. | **Penicillin zinanidhuru.** |
| I have been vaccinated. | **Nimechanjwa.** |
| I have my own syringe. | **Nina sindano yangu mwenyewe.** |
| Is it possible for me to travel? | **Ninaweza kusafiri?** |

## Eyesight

| | |
|---|---|
| I have broken my glasses. | **Miwani zangu zimevunjika.** |
| Can you repair them? | **Unaweza kuzitengeneza?** |
| I need new lenses. | **Ninahitaji vioo vya miwani vipya.** |
| When will they be ready? | **Lini zitakuwa tayari?** |
| How much do I owe you? | **Na pesa ngapi nikulipe?** |
| contact lenses | **lenzi ya plastiki** |

| | |
|---|---|
| contact lens solution | **dawa ya kusafisha lenzi ya plastiki** |

## Extra words

| | |
|---|---|
| AIDS | **ukimwi** |
| alcoholic | **mlevi** |
| alcoholism | **madhara ya ulevi** |
| altitude sickness | **maradhi ya nyanda za juu** |
| amputation | **kukata kiungo** |
| anemia | **safura** |
| anesthetic | **nuskaputi** |
| anesthetist | **mtaalamu wa nuskaputi** |
| antibiotic | **dawa ya kukata sumu** |
| antiseptic | **antiseptiki** |
| aspirin | **aspirini** |
| better | **afadhali** |
| bite: mosquito bite | **mtafuno wa mbu** |
| insect bite | **mtafuno wa mdudu** |
| snakebite | **mtafuno wa nyoka** |
| This insect bit me. | **Mdudu huyu kanitafuna.** |
| This snake bit me. | **Nyoka huyu kanitafuna.** |
| blood | **damu** |
| blood group | **grupu la damu** |
| blood pressure: | **blood presha** |
| low blood pressure | **presha iko chini** |
| high blood pressure | **presha iko juu** |
| blood transfusion | **kutiwa damu** |
| bone | **mfupa** |
| cancer | **kaa; donda ndugu** |
| choke: He/She's choking! | **Chakula kimemkwama!** |
| cholera | **kolera; kipindupindu** |
| clinic | **kliniki; zahanati** |
| dentist | **daktari wa meno** |
| drug *(medical)* | **dawa** |

| | |
|---|---|
| drug *(narcotic)* | **madawa ya kulevya** |
| epidemic | **magonjwa ya kusambaza** |
| fever | **homa** |
| flu | **flu** |
| flying doctor | **huduma ya daktari kwa ndege** |
| frostbite | **ugonjwa wa kuganda tishu kwa jalidi** |
| germs | **mbegu** |
| heart attack | **maradhi ya moyo** |
| heatstroke | **harara** |
| HIV | **ukimwi** |
| hygiene | **usafi** |
| infection | **kuambukiza** |
| limbs | **viungo** |
| malaria | **malaria** |
| needle | **sindano** |
| nurse | **muuguzaji** |
| operating theatre/room | **sehemu ya kufanya opereshan** |
| (surgical) operation | **opereshan** |
| oxygen | **hewa; oksijeni** |
| painkiller | **dawa ya kukata maumivu** |
| physiotherapy | **uganga wa viungo** |
| rabies | **kichaa cha mbwa** |
| seasick: I am seasick. | **Nina kichefuchefu cha bahari.** |
| sleeping pill | **vidonge vya usingizi** |
| spots | **vipele** |
| stethoscope | **stetoskopu** |
| sunstroke | **ugonjwa wa kutokana na jua kali** |
| surgeon | **daktari** |
| (act of) surgery | **upasuaji** |
| syringe | **sindano** |
| thermometer | **kipimaji cha homa** |
| tranquilizer | **dawa ya kutuliza** |

# 23. TOOLS

| | |
|---|---|
| binoculars | **darubini** |
| brick | **tufali** |
| brush | **brashi** |
| cable | **kebul** |
| cooker/stove | **jiko la umeme** |
| drill | **keekee** |
| eyeglasses | **miwani za macho** |
| gas bottle | **chupa ya gesi** |
| hammer | **nyundo** |
| handle | **kishikio** |
| hose | **mpira wa maji** |
| insecticide | **kiua wa dudu** |
| ladder | **ngazi** |
| machine | **mashine** |
| microscope | **hadubini** |
| nail | **msumari** |
| padlock | **kufuli** |
| paint | **rangi** |
| pickaxe | **kishoka** |
| plank | **ubao** |
| plastic | **plastiki** |
| rope | **kamba** |
| rubber | **rubber** |
| saw | **msumeno** |
| scissors | **mkasi** |
| screw | **skurubu** |
| screwdriver | **bisibisi** |
| sewing machine | **cherahani** |
| spade | **pauro** |
| spanner/wrench | **spana** |
| string | **mshipi** |
| sunglasses | **miwani za jua** |
| telescope | **darubini** |
| varnish | **vanish** |
| wire | **waya** |

# 24. THE CAR

| | |
|---|---|
| Where can I rent a car? | **Wapi ninaweza kukodi gari?** |
| Where can I rent a car with a driver? | **Wapi ninaweza kukodi gari pamoja na dereva?** |
| How much is it per day? | **Kiasi gani kwa siku?** |
| How much is it per week? | **Kiasi gani kwa wiki?** |
| Can I park here? | **Ninaweza kupaki hapa?** |
| Are we on the right road for ... ? | **Tuko njia sawa ya kwenda ... ?** |
| Where is the nearest filling station/gas station? | **Iko wapi shel?** |
| Fill the tank please. | **Jaza mafuta.** |
| Check the oil/tires/ battery, please. | **Angalia mafuta/mpira/ betri.** |
| I have lost my car keys. | **Nimepoteza funguo za gari.** |
| I've broken down. | **Gari yangu imeharibika.** |
| There's something wrong with this car. | **Gari hii ina matatizo.** |
| I have a puncture/flat tire. | **Mpira wa gari umetoboka.** |
| I have run out of petrol/ gas. | **Nimeishiwa na petroli.** |
| Our car is stuck. | **Gari yetu imekwama.** |
| We need a mechanic. | **Tunahitaji fundi wa gari.** |
| Can you tow us? | **Unaweza kutuvuta?** |

| | |
|---|---|
| Where is the nearest garage? | **Gareji ya karibu iko wapi?** |
| Can you jumpstart the car? | **Unaweza kuijampstat gari?** |

| | |
|---|---|
| There's been an accident. | **Kumetokea ajali.** |
| My car has been stolen. | **Gari yangu imeibiwa.** |
| Call the police. | **Waite polisi.** |

## Car words

| | |
|---|---|
| driver's license | **kibali cha kuendesha gari** |
| insurance policy | **bima ya gari** |
| car papers | **makaratasi ya gari** |
| car registration | **nambari ya gari** |
| accelerator | **kichapuzi** |
| air | **upepo** |
| battery | **betri** |
| bonnet/hood | **boneti** |
| boot/trunk | **buti** |
| brake | **breki** |
| bumper | **bampa** |
| car park | **pa kupaki gari** |
| clutch | **klachi** |
| driver | **dereva** |
| engine | **injin** |
| exhaust | **egzosti** |
| fan belt | **fanbelti** |
| gear | **gia** |
| indicator light | **taa** |
| inner tube | **tubu ya ndani** |
| jack | **jeki** |
| mechanic | **fundi wa gari** |
| neutral drive | **gia huru** |
| oil | **mafuta** |
| oilcan | **kopo la mafuta** |

| | |
|---|---|
| passenger | **abiria** |
| petrol | **petroli** |
| pump | **pampu** |
| radiator | **redieta** |
| reverse | **rudi nyuma; rivas** |
| seat | **kiti** |
| spare tyre/tire | **mpira spea** |
| speed | **spidi** |
| steering wheel | **usukani** |
| tank | **tengi** |
| tow rope | **kamba ya kuvutia** |
| tyre/tire | **mpira; taire** |
| windscreen wipers | **waipa** |
| windshield | **kioo cha gari** |

## New words . . .

As already mentioned in the Grammar section, Swahili is continually generating new words at every level of society. Some commonly accepted technical words that give a good indication of this process are:

| | |
|---|---|
| airconditioner | **kiyoyozi** |
| allergy | **mzio** |
| copyright | **hati miliki** |
| e-mail | **barua pepe** |
| fridge | **jokofu** |
| infrastructure | **mitindo mbinu** |
| globalization | **utandawizi** |
| network or internet | **mtandao** |
| protocol | **itifaki** |
| submarine | **nyambizi** |

# 25. SPORTS

| | |
|---|---|
| athletics | **riadha** |
| ball | **mpira (wakucheza)** |
| basketball | **basketboli** |
| chess | **chesi** |
| cricket | **kriket** |
| goal | **goli** |
| horse racing | **mbio za farasi** |
| horseback riding | **kupanda farasi** |
| match | **mechi** |
| soccer match | **mechi ya mpira** |
| pitch | **uwanja wa mpira** |
| referee | **rifarii** |
| rugby | **ragbi** |
| soccer/football | **mpira wa miguu; futbali** |
| stadium | **uwanja wa mpira** |
| swimming | **kuogolea** |
| team | **timu** |
| wrestling | **miereka** |
| Who won? | **Nani kashinda?** |
| What's the score? | **Mangapi kwa mangapi?** |
| Who scored? | **Nani katia goli?** |

# 26. THE BODY

| | |
|---|---|
| ankle | **kifundo (ya mguu)** |
| arm | **mkono** |
| back | **mgongo** |
| beard | **ndevu** |
| blood | **damu** |
| body | **mwili** |
| bone | **mfupa** |
| bottom | **matako** |
| breasts/bust | **maziwa** |
| chest | **kifua** |
| chin | **kidevu** |
| ear | **shikio** |
| elbow | **kisugudi** |
| eye | **jicho** |
| face | **uso** |
| finger | **kidole** |
| foot | **mguu** |
| genitals | **sehemu nyeti** |
| hair | **nywele** |
| hand | **kiganja** |
| head | **kichwa** |
| heart | **moyo** |
| jaw | **taya** |
| kidneys | **mafigo** |
| knee | **goti** |
| leg | **mguu** |
| lip | **mdomo** |
| liver | **ini** |
| lung | **pafu** |
| mustache | **masharubu** |
| mouth | **mdomo** |
| neck | **shingo** |
| nose | **pua** |

| | |
|---|---|
| shoulder | **bega** |
| stomach | **tumbo** |
| throat | **roho** |
| thumb | **dole gumba** |
| toe | **kidole cha mguu** |
| tongue | **ulimi** |
| tooth | **jino** |
| teeth | **meno** |
| vein | **mishipa ya damu** |
| womb | **fuko la uzazi** |
| wrist | **kiganja** |

# 27. TIME & DATES

| | |
|---|---|
| century | **karne** |
| decade | **miaka kumi** |
| year | **mwaka** |
| month | **mwezi** |
| fortnight | **wiki mbili** |
| week | **wiki** |
| day | **siku** |
| hour | **saa** |
| minute | **dakika** |
| second | **sekunde; nukta** |
| | |
| dawn; sunrise | **alfijiri** |
| morning | **asubuhi** |
| daytime | **mchana** |
| noon | **mchana; adhuhuri** |
| afternoon | **laasiri; mchana** |
| evening | **magharibi** |
| sunset | **magharibi** |
| night | **usiku** |
| midnight | **usiku wa manane** |
| | |
| four days before | **siku nne kabla** |
| three days before | **siku tatu kabla** |
| the day before yesterday | **juzi** |
| yesterday | **jana** |
| today | **leo** |
| tomorrow | **kesho** |
| the day after tomorrow | **kesho kutwa** |
| three days from now | **baada ya siku tatu** |
| four days from now | **baada ya siku nne** |

| | |
|---|---|
| the year before last | **mwaka juzi** |
| last year | **mwaka jana** |
| this year | **mwaka huu** |
| next year | **mwakani** |
| the year after next | **baada ya mwakani** |
| last week | **wiki ilio pita** |
| this week | **wiki hii** |
| next week | **wiki ijayo** |
| this morning | **leo asubuhi** |
| now | **sasa hivi** |
| tonight | **leo usiku** |
| yesterday morning | **jana asubuhi** |
| yesterday afternoon | **jana mchana** |
| yesterday night | **jana usiku** |
| tomorrow morning | **kesho asubuhi** |
| tomorrow afternoon | **kesho mchana** |
| tomorrow night | **kesho usiku** |
| | |
| in the morning | **asubuhi** |
| in the afternoon | **mchana** |
| in the evening | **usiku** |
| | |
| past | **iliyopita** |
| present | **sasa** |
| future | **ijayo** |
| | |
| What date is it today? | **Leo tarehe gani?** |

## Days of the week

| | |
|---|---|
| Monday | **Jumatatu** |
| Tuesday | **Jumanne** |
| Wednesday | **Jumatano** |
| Thursday | **Alhamisi** |
| Friday | **Ijumaa** |
| Saturday | **Jumamosi** |
| Sunday | **Jumapili** |

## Months

| | |
|---|---|
| January | **Januari** |
| February | **Februari** |
| March | **Machi** |
| April | **Aprili** |
| May | **Mei** |
| June | **Juni** |
| July | **Julai** |
| August | **Agosti** |
| September | **Septemba** |
| October | **Oktoba** |
| November | **Novemba** |
| December | **Desemba** |

## Time

Swahili time (listed below) runs on an hour system reckoned from dawn to dawn and not midnight to midnight. East Africans tend to refer to Swahili time when speaking Swahili and standard time when speaking English — they never confuse the two. Note that clocks may also be set to Swahili time. Both 7 a.m. and 7 p.m. are reckoned as **saa moja** ('one o'clock'), while midnight and midday are **saa sita** ('six o'clock'). All you do is add or subtract six hours from the standard time (or you can learn to read the opposite hour on your watch — if it's analogue). Although this may seem strange, one only has to remember that most countries keep time according to both 12-hour and 24-hour clocks. Whichever time system you are using, use **asubuhi** (morning) to indicate 'a.m.' and **usiku** (evening/night) for 'p.m.' In Muslim areas, the calls to prayer by the muezzins from the mosques also help mark time.

| | |
|---|---|
| What time is it? | **Saa ngapi?** |
| It is ... o'clock. | **Saa ...** |

| *Standard time* | *Swahili time* |
|---|---|
| **6 a.m.** | **saa kumi na mbili (alfijiri)** |
| 7 a.m. | **saa moja (asubuhi)** |
| 8 a.m. | **saa mbili (asubuhi)** |

| | |
|---|---|
| 9 a.m. | **saa tatu (asubuhi)** |
| 10 a.m. | **saa nne (asubuhi)** |
| 11 a.m. | **saa tano (asubuhi)** |
| noon | **saa sita (asubuhi)** |
| 1 p.m. | **saa saba (asubuhi)** |
| 2 p.m. | **saa nane (asubuhi)** |
| 3 p.m. | **saa tisa (asubuhi)** |
| 4 p.m. | **saa kumi (asubuhi)** |
| 5 p.m. | **saa kumi na moja (asubuhi)** |
| 6 p.m. | **saa kumi na mbili (magharibi)** |
| 7 p.m. | **saa moja (usiku)** |
| 8 p.m. | **saa mbili (usiku)** |
| 9 p.m. | **saa tatu (usiku)** |
| 10 p.m. | **saa nne (usiku)** |
| 11 p.m. | **saa tano (usiku)** |
| midnight | **saa sita (usiku)** |
| 1 a.m. | **saa saba (usiku)** |
| 2 a.m. | **saa nane (usiku)** |
| 3 a.m. | **saa tisa (usiku)** |
| 4 a.m. | **saa kumi (usiku)** |
| 5 a.m. | **saa kumi na moja (usiku)** |

# 28. NUMBERS & AMOUNTS

| | |
|---|---|
| 0 | **sufuri** |
| 1 | **moja** |
| 2 | **mbili** |
| 3 | **tatu** |
| 4 | **nne** |
| 5 | **tano** |
| 6 | **sita** |
| 7 | **saba** |
| 8 | **nane** |
| 9 | **tisa** |
| 10 | **kumi** |
| 11 | **kumi na moja** |
| 12 | **kumi na mbili** |
| 13 | **kumi na tatu** |
| 14 | **kumi na nne** |
| 15 | **kumi na tano** |
| 16 | **kumi na sita** |
| 17 | **kumi na saba** |
| 18 | **kumi na nane** |
| 19 | **kumi na tisa** |
| 20 | **ishirini** |
| 22 | **ishirini na mbili** |
| 30 | **thelathini** |
| 32 | **thelathini na mbili** |
| 40 | **arubaini** |
| 42 | **arubaini na mbili** |
| 50 | **hamsini/khamsini** |
| 52 | **hamsini na mbili** |
| 60 | **sitini** |
| 62 | **sitini na mbili** |
| 70 | **sabiini** |
| 72 | **sabiini na mbili** |

| | |
|---|---|
| 80 | **themanini** |
| 82 | **themanini na mbili** |
| 90 | **tisiini** |
| 92 | **tisiini na mbili** |
| 100 | **mia** |
| 102 | **mia na mbili** |
| 112 | **mia na kumi na mbili** |
| 200 | **mia mbili** |
| 300 | **mia tatu** |
| 400 | **mia nne** |
| 500 | **mia tano** |
| 600 | **mia sita** |
| 700 | **mia saba** |
| 800 | **mia nane** |
| 900 | **mia tisa** |
| 1,000 | **elfu** |
| 10,000 | **elfu kumi** |
| 50,000 | **elfu hamsini** |
| 100,000 | **laki moja** |
| 1,000,000 | **milioni** |
| | |
| first | **mwanzo** |
| second | **ya pili** |
| third | **ya tatu** |
| fourth | **ya nne** |
| tenth | **ya kumi** |
| twentieth | **ya ishirini** |
| | |
| once | **mara moja** |
| twice | **mara mbili** |
| three times | **mara tatu** |
| | |
| one-half | **nusu** |
| one-third | **theluthi** |
| one-quarter | **robo** |
| three-quarters | **moja kasorobo** |

## Weights & measures

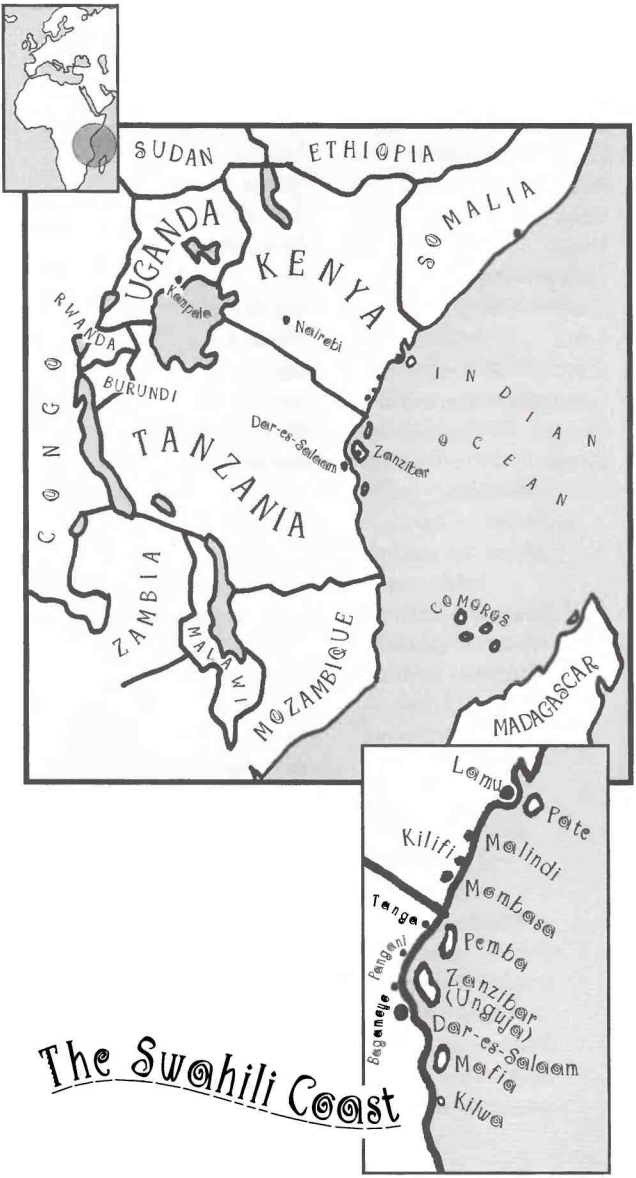
| | |
|---|---|
| kilometer | **kilomita** |
| meter | **mita** |
| mile | **meli** |
| foot | **futi** |
| yard | **yadi** |
| | |
| gallon | **gelon** |
| liter | **lita** |
| | |
| kilogram | **kilo** |
| pound | **ratili** |
| gram | **gramu** |
| ounce | **aunsi** |

# 29. OPPOSITES

| | |
|---|---|
| beginning—end | **mwanzo—mwisho** |
| clean—dirty | **safi—chafu** |
| happy—unhappy | **furaha—huzuni** |
| life—death | **uhai—mauti** |
| friend—enemy | **rafiki—adui** |
| to open—to shut | **kuwazi—kufunga** |
| wide—narrow | **pana—nyembamba** |
| high—low | **juu—chini** |
| peace—violence/war | **amani—vita** |
| silence—noise | **kimya—ghasia** |
| cheap—expensive | **rahisi—ghali** |
| hot/warm—cold/cool | **joto—baridi** |
| health—disease | **siha—maradhi** |
| well—sick | **mzima—mgonjwa** |
| night—day | **mchana—usiku** |
| top—bottom | **juu—chini** |
| backwards—forwards | **nyuma—mbele** |
| back—front | **nyuma—mbele** |
| near—far | **karibu—mbali** |
| left—right | **kushoto—kulia** |
| in—out | **ndani—nje** |
| up—down | **juu—chini** |
| here—there | **hapa—pale** |
| easy—difficult | **rahisi—shida** |
| quick—slow | **mbio-mbio—taratibu** |
| strong—weak | **nguvu—dhaifu** |
| success—failure | **kufaulu—kufeli** |
| new—old | **mpya—kongwe** |
| question—answer | **suala—jawabu** |
| safety—danger | **salama—hatari** |
| true—false | **kweli—uwongo** |
| truth—lie | **ukweli—uwongo** |

# 30. STAR SIGNS

| | |
|---|---|
| Sagittarius | **Mshale** |
| Capricorn | **Mbuzi** |
| Aquarius | **Ndoo** |
| Aries | **Kondoo** |
| Virgo | **Mashuke** |
| Cancer | **Kaa** |
| Leo | **Simba** |
| Libra | **Mizani** |
| Scorpio | **Nge** |
| Gemini | **Mapacha** |
| Taurus | **Ng'ombe** |
| Pisces | **Samaki** |




The Swahili Coast

## *African Language Titles from Hippocrene:*

**Swahili-English/English-Swahili Practical Dictionary**
35,000 entries · 596 pages · 4¼ x 7 ·
ISBN 0-7818-0480-9 · $27.95pb

**Afrikaans-English/English-Afrikaans Practical Dictionary, Revised Edition**
25,000 entries · 372 pages · 5¼ x 7 ·
ISBN 0-7818-0846-4 · $22.95pb

**Hausa-English/English-Hausa Practical Dictionary**
18,000 entries · 431 pages · 5 x 7 ·
ISBN 0-7818-0426-4 · $21.95pb

**Igbo-English/English-Igbo Dictionary & Phrasebook**
3000 entries · 186 pages · 3¾ x 7 ·
ISBN 0-7818-0661-5 · $12.95pb

**Malagasy-English/English-Malagasy Dictionary & Phrasebook**
2500 entries · 170 pages · 3¾ x 7½ ·
ISBN 0-7818-0843-X · $11.95pb

**Pulaar-English/English-Pulaar Standard Dictionary**
30,000 entries · 276 pages · 5½ x 8½ ·
ISBN 0-7818-0479-5 · $19.95pb

# SWAHILI
## DICTIONARY & PHRASEBOOK

SWAHILI - ENGLISH
ENGLISH - SWAHILI

This essential language guide presents the traveler with the vocabulary and phrases necessary to communicate in Swahili, the most widely spoken African language. The two-way dictionary has over 5,000 total entries; the phrasebook contains terms and phrases for travel and daily life situations, as well as invaluable cultural information.

Swahili or Kiswahili was spoken originally along the eastern coast of Africa. Now the official language of Tanzania and a major language in Kenya, Uganda, and eastern Congo (Zaire), Swahili is the lingua franca of Eastern Africa.

- o 5,000 total entries
- o Pronunciation guide
- o Basic Swahili grammar
- o Essential phrases
- o Ideal for the traveler, student or businessperson

Nicholas Awde is a linguist who was raised in Kenya and now resides in London. He is the author of a Swahili-English/English-Swahili Practical Dictionary (Hippocrene Books, 2000), among many other language-related publications.

Cover photograph by G. Frysinger "By dhow from Zanzibar"
Cover design by RM Design

US $12.95/CAN $16.00
ISBN-13: 978-0-7818-0905-4
ISBN-10: 0-7818-0905-3
51295
9 780781 809054

Hippocrene Books, Inc. 171 Madison Avenue New York, NY 10016
www.hippocrenebooks.com